



Tim Falla, Paul A Davies

OXFORD

UNIT	A VOCABULARY AND LISTENING	B GRAMMAR	CULTURE
On camera	p4 Fashion Describing clothes (buggy, crement, stylish, handy, en.) Clothes (combut troupers, hoody, etc.) Compound adjections (high hadled, short-steeved, etc.) Gramman Order of adjectives Fashion show commentary	p5. Present tense contrast State and cynamic verbs	p6 Stereotypes? Maybe it's because I'm a Londoner *** Talking about national characteristics
et ready for your mam p12	Lesson 1 Listening True/False/Not strice Use of English Mi- Lesson 2 Reading Multiple matching Speaking Situational	ultiple-choice gapfili Speaking Picture-b role-play	osed discussion
2 Memories	p14 How did you feel? Feelings (disoppointed, itrilated, talleved, etc.) Yourn formation (embarrassed/embarrassmanl, confused/ confusion, nervous/nervousness, etc.) **Memories**	p15 Pasr tense contrast	p16 Remembering the past Policy Day Attitudes to remoniprance days Vocabulary: Adjective prefixes (dis-, in-, un-, etc.)
	• Language review Units 1/2 p22 • Skills reund-up Units 1-	2 p23	
3 Nine to five	p24 The world of work lobs and gunder (architect, estate agent, surgeon, etc.) Places of work (affice, studio, etc.) Activities at work (unswer (fin phone, do paperwork, etc.) Describing work (menial, stressful, etc.) What's my jub?	pas Defining relative clauses	p26 Working abroad Reading: All in a day's work Life for immigrants in the UK Vocabulary: Expressing an opinion Vocabulary: Agreeing and disagreeing Vocabulary: Agent nouns suffixes (Feb. 1957, 1957, 1967)
Set ready for your exam p32	Lesson 3 Listening Multiple-choice statements. Use of Engl Lesson 4 Reading Overfalse statements and finding eviden	ish Open rioze: Speaking Structional roles. Speaking Picture-based discussion	ie-play
4 Body and mind	p34 The human body Parts of the body (ankle, eyebrois, enist, etc.) Inside the body (muscle, spine, with, etc.) Idioms with carts of the body (to be head over heels, to get samelhing off your chest, etc.) Idioms with parts of the body	p3's pla and present perfect contact. Time expressions lyesterday, this aroraing, yet, etc.)	p36 Fast food addicts Otorsity – who is to planne? Vocabulary, Tegal terms (to see Somebody, ntr.) MR American teenagers and diet and lifestyle
	• Language review Units 3-4 p42 • Skills round-up Units 1-	+ p43	
5 Our future	pA4 Computing Computing (get online, log onto, etc.) Grammat: Zero conditional Well in a computer shop Noun prefixes (mega., multi-, etc.)	p6% Taking about the future could, may (m0), might (n0), with first conditional. You climate Phieses for agreeing and disagreeing if (don't) think that's how. It's)	p46: A greener future? Going green Vocabulary: Politics and the State (compolign, itc.) Environmental issues Vocabulary: Compound neuro (1)
Get ready for your exam ps2	Lesson 6 Reading Missing sentences. Use of English Word. Lesson 6 Listening Matching statements to speakers. Spea	formation gapfill. Speaking Debate	
6 Telling tales	p54 Murder in the library -louse and garden (balcony, distingine, hedge, laval, etc.)	say and tell	a56 Mythiorreality? The Loch Ness Monster Sasquatch
	• Language review Italis 5-6 p62 • Skills round-up Laits 1-	€ p63	
7 True love?	p64 Relationships Dating and relationships (get martical, spiii un, etc.) Stages at a relationship Time expressions (after a few days, in the end, etc.) Thice-part phrasal veras	pt 5 Comparison Comparative and superlative advertes tess and feest Comparatives and clauses Superfailues and the present perfect	p£6 W B Yeats The life of W B Yeats When you are old
Set mady for your exam p72	Lesson 7 Listening Completing statements. Use of English	Open cloze Speaking Picture-based dis	cussioา
	Lesson 3 Reading Multiple matching Speaking Structional p.74 Getting from A to B	prote-proy	p76 Tourism and travel
8 Travel	Invel and transport (backpacking, customs, piatform, etc.) A disastrous journey		The Bultish on holiday Vocabulary: Holidays, trips and excursions (play breex, traise, package holiday, etc.) Vocabulary: Tourism and travel People speaking about their nuilday preferences
	* Language review Units 7-8 p82 * Skills round-up Units 2-	в р83	
9 Spend, spend spend!	p64 Money and finance Money and payment (cheque, currency, FIN number, etc.) Talking about money Prepositions – noun philaris	p something done Reflexive propouns	p86 Advertising in schools Reading: Young minds for sale 1 Pros and cons of advertising in schools Vocabulary: Small and large numbers
Get ready for your exam p92	Lesson 9 Reading Multiple-choice statements Speaking Sit Lesson 10 Listening Marching statements to speakers Use of		king Picture-based discussion
10 Inspiration	p94 Art and artists Visual and performing arts (costroct painting, graffit), sculpture, etc.) Begind the scenes Artists and artistic activities	998 Participle clauses	p96 sit art? Sit art Opinions or modern art



n97 Determiners: all. each, p98 Urban art every, few, little, etc.

Banksy and Pavement Picasso Vocabulary: Compared noons (3) #100 Evaluating an experience

Gramman so and such Prohubilation: Emphasising your opinion Mil Talking about performances

p101 A discursive essay Essay plans Stammar: Nominal subject clauses

B2 EXAMS p104 Lesson 1 • Reading Mussing sentences | Speaking Picture-based discussion

Lesson 2 * Listening Multiple-Chaine statements. Use of English Open class. Writing Essay

Lesson 3 • Reading Multiple-choice statements | Speaking Debate

Lesson 4 - Listening Multiple metching - Use of English Open cloze - Writing Essay

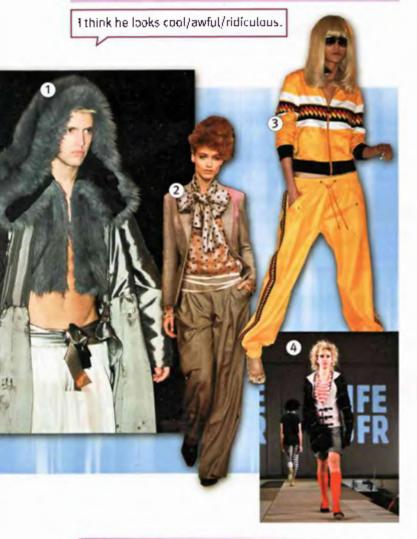
On camera

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING Fashion

I can describe detken.

Look at the photos. Give your opinions of the outfits using the adjectives in the box.

awful beautiful cool elegant great ridiculous scruffy smart stylish trendy



Vocabulary Builder 1.1: Clothes: p. 128

Describing clothes

patterns: check flowery plain spotty stripy shape: baggy long loose short tight texture: creased furry shiny smooth materials: cotton fur leather nylon wool other: high-heeled long-sleeved matching short-sleeved

THIS UNIT INCLUDES ...

Vocabulary • clothes • descriping clothes • compound adjectives • national new Grammar • order of adjectives • present tonse contrast • state and dynamic + -verb + infinitive/-/ng

Speaking • describing different nationalities • discussing the issue of some fine describing a photograph.

Writing . an informal letter

2 Look at the words for describing clothes in the box. Make. a list of the clothes you can see in the pictures, adding one adjective to each.

а этору тор, а экіну сол, ...

- 3 🔐 1.01 Listen to a fashion show commentary. Which of the outfits in exercise 1 is described? How many other outfits are also described?
- 4 1.01 Complete the phrases from the commentary using words from the box. Then listen again and check.

1	an attractive, brown jacket
2	a T-shirt
3	casual,, black jeans
4	a, grey, jacket
5	a large,scarf
6	a, dark, coat.

5 What order are the adjectives in the phrases in exercise 4 in? Complete the rule in the Learn this! box with colour, material and shape.

Ž p.,	When we have more than one adjective before a nour
ESE.	they usually come in this order: 1 opinion, 2 size or
_ - 	When we have more than one adjective before a nour athey usually come in this order: 1 opinion, 2 size or + noun

Grammar Builder 1.1: Order of adjectives: p. 108

Speaking tip

Use these phrases when you cannot describe someone's clothes exactly:

it's a kind of / it's a bit like a / it looks like a + noun it looks / it's sort of + adjective

She's wearing a kind of scarf. Her hat is sort of brown.

SPEAKING Describe the outfits in exercise 1. Use phrases from the speaking tip above.

She's wearing elegant, baggy, long trousers. She's also wearing a kind of...

Vacabulary Builder 1.2: Compound adjectives: p. 128

GRAMMAR Present tense contrast

EXPANING Look at the photo of a brother and sister. What are they wearing and doing? Use the verbs in the box to help do.

hold shout smile take a photo wait wear



Louis Hurry up. That's the bus for the cinema. Our film starts in fifteen minutes.

Carol Just a second. I'm taking a photo of you.

Louis You're always taking photos. It's really annoying. What do you do with them all?

Larol I usually send them to my friends.

Enuis

Who are you sending that photo to?

Carol My friend Laura. She lives in New York. She's

coming to stay with us next month.

Louis Why are you sending her a photo of me?

Carol Don't worry about that. Come on! The bus is

leaving!

- read the dialogue. Underline all the examples of the present simple and present continuous.
- Study the examples you underlined in the dialogue. Then write S (simple) or C (continuous) for each use in the table. ch two uses refer to the future?

We use the present ...

- 1 _____ For habits and routines.
- for something happening now or about now.
- _____ for describing annoying behaviour (with always).
- for a permanent situation or fact.
- for arrangements in the future.
- for timetables and schedules (e.g. cinema programmes).
- implete the rest of the dialogue with the present simple or present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

Taral	Just a moment. My phone (ring). It's	Laura
	Hi, Laura! I'm on the bus We 2 (see) the
	new Spielberg film this afternoon Yes, L ³	
	(look) forward to it. Spielberg 4 (make	e) great
	films.	

_(she / phone) from New York? What

.(she / say)?

i can use different present tenses to talk about the present and future.

Carol	Be quiet, Louis! Sorry, Laura. My brother /
	(always / interrupt) me when I'm on the phone. It's
	so annoying!
Lauis	Sorry,

Carol Yes, I 2 (often / go) to the cinema with Louis. ...

Louis Why s_____ (you / laugh)?

f have to go now, Laura. But the film 10_____ (finish) Carol

at five o'clock. Let's speak later.

Grammar Builder 1.2: Present tense contrast: p. 108

5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Complete these sentences with true information about you. Remember that the present continuous can refer to current actions or future arrangements.

1 I wear ...

5 I'm wearing ...

2 I study ...

6 I'm studying ...

3 | go ...

7 I'm going ...

4 | I have ...

8 I'm having ...

I wear shorts when I play football. I'm wearing jeans at the moment.

State verbs

State verbs describe a state or situation, and are not usually used in continuous tenses.

enjoy like love hate prefer understand believe remember forget wont need belong

6 Read the Learn this! box and complete the sentences with the state verbs in the box below.

belong enjoy know mean prefer remember not understand want

	-			
1	That	DIVE	to n	no.

2 | _____ baggy clothes to tight clothes.

My brother ______ to borrow my leather jacket.

4 | _____ this sentence. Can you explain it?
5 | _____ what you _____.

6 Hello! ______ you _____ me? We met briefly at Susan's party.

7 ______you _____ meeting people?

Grammar Builder 1.3: State and dynamic verbs: p. 109

7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Tell your partner:

- 1 two things you do every day.
- 2 two things that are happening in the classroom now.
- Iwo things you're doing next weekend.
- 4 two facts about yourself or your family.
- two things that people are always doing which annoy you.
- 6 two things that you want but don't need OR two things that you need but don't want.

CULTURE Stereotypes?

I can talk about differences between nationalities.

- Look at the photo and the title of the text. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Where are the people?
 - 2 What are they wearing?
 - 3 What are they doing?
 - 4 What aren't they coing?
- Read the text. Who has the most negative view of Londoners: Sam, Joanna or Amir?

Maybe It's Because I'm A Londoner



Look at the people in the photograph. They're sitting close together on an underground train, but they aren't smiling or talking to each other. This is how the world usually sees Londoners; quiet, reserved, unfriendly. But how accurate is this impression? We asked three residents of London to give their opinions.

Sam, age 18. British, bern in London.

'I don't think Londoners are particularly miserable – in fact, we like a good loke. But we're probably a bit gloomy and pessimistic. When it comes to sport, for example, we cheer on the British competitors and teams, but we aren't really surprised when they lose. We accept underachievement as the norm. I think Americans are different: they expect to win.'

Joanna, age 19. Polish, living in Lendon for a year.

I think Londoners are really cold and unfriendly. People here don't chat – they don't say hallo to their neighbours, and some of them wouldn't even recognise their neighbours in the street. I find it difficult to make friends here. In fact, I spend most of my time with Poles, not English people. People claim that the English are nice when you get to know them, but how can you get to know them when they're so uncommunicative?'

Amir, age 17. British, born in London, Pakistani parents,

London is a truly multicultural city. I think it's true to say that more than one in three of the city's population belong to an ethnic minority group, and you can hear about 300 different languages here. New people are arriving all the time, so the city is changing day by day. It's a vary competitive, fast-moving place. Most Londoners are focused, and aren't afraid of work – they know what they want and how to get it!"

3		Match the opinions about Londoners with the three people. Write S (Sam), J (Joanna) or A (Amir).			
	1	They aren't very welcoming.			
	2	They work very hard.			
	3	They don't talk to each other very much.			
	4	They've got a good sense of humour.			
	5	They're ambitious.			

4 1.02 Listen to four teenagers' opinions about people from their own country. What are their nationalities? Choose from the words in the box.

Nationalities

6 They aren't optim stic.

American Argentinian Australian Belgian Brazilian Chinese French German Greek Hungarian Japanese Polish Russian Spanish Swiss

	Nationality
Rosanna	
Ethan	
Junko	
Carlos	

\$\int_{\text{1.02}}\$ Listen again, Match two opinions (a-h) with each person. Write R (Rosanna), E (Ethan), J (Junko) or C (Carlos) next to each opinion.
 a They're usually polite and formal with strangers.

D	rney re very patriotic.	\Box
Ċ	They're very talkative.	
d	They're hard-working.	
e	They're really cheerful.	

- f They don't like to show their emotions.

 g They're very generous.
- h They're qu'te warm and friendly.
- Work in pairs. How would you describe people from: (a) your own town or city, (b) from another country you know? Choose adjectives from the box or your own ideas and make notes.

friend!y/unfriendly optimistic/pessimist'c serious/funny talkative/quiet hard-working/lazy rude/polite ambitious/unambitious relaxed/tense mean/generous reliable/unreliable arrogant/modest

7 SPEAKING Tell the class your ideas from exercise 6. Do they agree?



Read the text about the paparazzi. Who do you agree with more, the celebrity or the photographer?



The public enjoy reading about stars in magazines — and they hope to see new photos of them with every article.

Who takes these photos? They're called the paparazzi: photographers who spend hours each day following famous people and waiting for them outside clubs, hotels and restaurants.

THE CELEBRITY

I refuse to co-operate with the paparazzi. I never agree to pose for photos, and I avoid going to clubs and restaurants. Often, I tan't face leaving the house because I know that they're waiting for me in the street outside. Of course, I tealise that fathe has a race, and I don't expect to lead a completely normal life – but magine having no privacy at all, I can't help thinking it's really unfair.

THE PHOTOGRAPHER

Most famous people presend to hate the paparazzi, but most of mem want to be in the magazines – stars need publicity. OK, they lose a bit of privacy – but they still manage to have a better life than most other people! And a lot of celebrities seem to enjoy the attention. It's the paparazzi who have a bad time. Sometimes we spend all night following celebrities and fail to get one good picture!

Find these verbs in the text. Are they followed by an infinitive or an -ing form? Add them to the chart.

agree avoid can't face can't help enjoy expect fail hope imagine manage pretend refuse seem spend (time) want

verb + infinitive	verb + -ing form
decide	fancy
happen	feel like
mean	can't stand
promise	suggest

Grammar Builder 1.4: Verb patterns: p. 109

3 Complete the text with the infinitive or -ing form of the verbs in brackets.

THE MAGAZINE EDITOR 'I can't stand ' (hear) celebrities complain about the paparazzi. If they don't feel like ' (have) their photo taken, they could stay at home. But instead, they decide ' (go) to expensive restaurants. They're only pretending ' (hate) the paparazzi. I often phone stars and suggest ' (take) some photos of them, and they usually agree ' (co-operate). And celebrities sometime phone me and promise ' (be) at a certain place at a certain
time – and they expect ' (see) photographers there! Stars need publicity, and they enjoy ' (be) on the pages of magazines.'
4 Complete the sentences with the infinitive or -ing form of the verbs in the box. Which opinions do you agree with? not be lead read understand write
not be read read uniderstand write

1	Lenjoy	about celebrities, but I think their privacy is also
	important.	

- 2 Magazines always seem ... about the same people.
- 3 I pretend ______ interested in delebrity magazines, but I secretly look at them!
- 4 I fail ... why people are so interested in celebrities.
- 5 Hove celebrity magazines. Foften imagine _____ that kind of life.
- 5 \$\infty\$ 1.03 Listen to four speakers. Match them with four of the opinions from exercise 4.

SPEAKER: 1 2 3 4 3

Verbs that change their meaning

- 1 Some verbs can be followed by an infinitive or an -ing form, without any difference in meaning.
- 2 Some verbs change meaning depending on whether they are followed by an infinitive or -ing form, e.g. remember forget stop try
- 6 Read the Learn this! box. Then translate the sentences. How does the meaning of the verbs change?
 - I won't forget to send you a postcard.
 - 2 I'll never forget seeing the Pyramids.
 - 3 He stopped to chat to his friends.
 - 4 He stopped chatting to his friends.
 - 5 I tried skiing but didn't like it.
 - 6 I tried to ski, but I coulon't even stand up on the skis.
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Tell your partner about something that you:
 - sometimes forget to do.
 will always remember doing.
 will never forget doing.
 tried to do, but couldn't.
 - 3 must remember to do. 6 tried doing, but didn't enjoy.
 - Grammar Builder 1.5: Verbs that change their meaning: p. 110

6 Watching shoppers

I can understand un article and a sing about surveillance.

- Look at the photos and answer the questions.
 - 1 What are Closed-Circuit Television (CCTV) cameras?
 - 2 Where do you usually find CCTV cameras? Are there any places you don't find them?
- Read the text. Match the headings with the paragraphs A-E. There is one heading you do not need.

1	Eyes in the sky	
2	What are CCTV cameras for?	
3	Internet surveillance	
4	They know who you are calling	
5	Safety on the streets	

Somebody is watching you

The first CCTV cameras appeared in Britsin in 1953, and by the 1960s there were already a few cameras in major streets in London.

Today, there are more than four million CCTV cameras across the country.

That's one camera for every fourteen people. The cameras are there to film dangerous or illegal behaviour. With new software, they can automatically

recognise the faces of known criminals, and a new kind of CCTV in the Netherlands can detect angry voices and automatically warn the police of trouble. But these cameras don't just watch criminals; they watch all of us, almost all of the time. Every time we go into a shop, or use a cashpoint machine, or travel on public transport a camera records our actions.

- B The amount of surveillance in towns and cities across Britain is increasing. Some goods in shops now have RFID (Radio Frequency Identification) tags attached to them. When you pick up one of these items, the RFID tag sends a radio message to a CCTV camera and the camera starts filming you. Shops say that this technology helps to catch shoplifters but only by treating everybody as a potential criminal.
- Gameras and tags are not the only ways of monitoring our actions. Every time you make or receive a call on your mobile phone, the phone company knows the number of the phone you are calling and how long the call lasts. It is even possible to work out your exact location. The police often use this information when they're investigating serious crimes.

3 Choose the best answers.

- 1 Today, there are CCTV cameras which
 - a know when a crime is in progress.
 - b identify people who have committed crimes before.
 - c can speak to people if they are getting angry.
 - d stop dangerous or illegal behaviour.
- 2 CCTV cameras record the actions of
 - a one in fourteen people in the UK.
 - b four million people.
 - c criminals in the UK.
 - d everybody in the UK.
- 3 CCTV cameras receive a message from RFID tags when a a shoplifter comes into the shop.
 - b a shoplifter steals an item.
 - c somebody lifts up an item that has got a tag.
 - d the camera starts filming.
- 4 When you use a mobile phone, the phone company can work out
 - a the name of the person you are speaking to.
 - b what you are saying.
 - c how long you have had the phone.
 - d where you are.
- And what about satellites? Are they watching us from space? How much can they see? Anybody with a computer can download Google Earth and get satellite photos of the entire world. Perhaps governments are using even more powerful satellites to watch their citizens.
- Even when you are at home, you are not necessarily safe from surveillance. When you use your computer to visit websites, you are probably sending and receiving cookies without realising it. Cookies transfer information from your computer to the website and, in theory, could record which websites you visit. Or perhaps somebody has secretly installed a keystroke logging program on your computer. These record every letter that you type on the keyboard: your passwords, your e-mails, your bank account numbers and more. Modern technology is making it easier and easier to stay in contact, but it is also making it nearly impossible for us to hide.



- 5 You can get photos of the world from space if you
 - a work for a government.
 - b go to a government website.
 - c work for Google.
 - d have a computer.
- 5 When you surf the Internet, cookies
 - a record every letter that you type.
 - bi record your passwords and e-mails.
 - a keep you safe from surveillance.
 - d exchange information with websites.
- Watch the highlighted words in the text with the definitions below.
 - 1 a machine which gives you money when you type in your code
 - 2 watching
 - 3 secret words that allow you to enter (a place or a website)
 - against the law
 - 5 inhabitants of a state or nation
 - 6 a label which you attach to an item (e.g. a suitcase)
 - Thansler from the Internet to your computer
 - Computer programs
 - people who steal from shops
- 5 Page 1.04 Read and complete the song with the words in the text. Then listen and check.

dream hair home life neighbours phone price showers tricks TV

- Find a word in the song, beginning with the letter P, which sums up how the singer is feeling. Why do you think some people feel that way about surveillance?
- Put the sentences into two groups: Arguments for surveillance and Arguments against surveillance.
 - 1 The police might misuse the information.
 - 2 Surveillance deters people from committing crime.
 - 3 If you don't do anything wrong, then you have nothing to fear from surveillance.
 - 4 Surveillance makes everybody feel guilty.
 - 5 It's the first step towards a police state.
 - Personal privacy is more important than catching criminals.
 - More surveillance means the police can catch more criminals.
 - 8 We rely too much on technology to solve social problems.
 - Public safety is more important than personal privacy.
- SPEAKING Work in groups. Discuss the questions and give reasons for your opinions. Use the arguments in exercise 7 to help you.
 - 1 Do you think the increase in surveillance in our society is a good thing or a bad thing?
 - Which, if any, of these methods of surveillance do you think are worrying? Give reasons.

CCTV cameras cookies RFID tags satellites the monitoring of mobile pixone calls

I think ... is worrying because ...

Somebody's Watching Me

(Who's watching? Tell me, who's watching? Who's watching me?)

I'm just an average man
With an average !_____
| work from nine to five
Hey, hell, I pay the !____
All I want is to be left alone
In my average !____
But why do I always feel
Like I'm in the twilight zone?

When I come home at night
I boilt the door real tight
People call me on the "
I'm trying to avoid
But can the people on "
Or am I just paranoid?

When I'm in the shower
I'm afraid to wash my '_____
'Cause I might open my eyes
And find someone standing there
People say I'm crazy
Just a little touched
But maybe '_____ remind me
Of Psycho too much. That's why
I always feel like somebody's watching me
And I have no privacy
I always feel like somebody's watching me
Who's playing '_____ on me?

I always feel like somebody's watching me And I have no privacy I always feel like somebody's watching me Tell me, is it just a dream?

I always feel like somebody's watching me And I have no privacy I always feel like somebody's watching me Who's playing tricks on me? Glossary

hviught zone – a place where everything is stronge bout – lock touched = crazy Psycho is a famous film about a murcerer mailman (WAOD) – postman

IRS – Internal Revenue Service, the government agency which collects taxes in the USA

Talking about photos



Sarah What's this photo?

Connor It's from our New Year's Eve party.

Sarah You look as though you're having a great time.

Who's the girl at the front, the one in the shiny,

grey dress?

Connor She's a friend of my sister's.

Sarah Is your sister in this photo?

Connor Yes, she is. She's the girl on the left, the one with

long, brown hair.

Sarah Oh, yes. She looks a bit like you. Who's the guy

standing at the back in the grey shirt?

Connor That's my cousin, Jeff.

Sarah He looks nice!

- 2 Complete the phrases for identifying people in photos. Use the prepositions in the box.

at in on with

- 1 the guy ___ the back/front
- 2 the girl _____ the left/right
- 3 the man ___ short, black hair
- 4 the woman _____ the stripy top
- 3 Read the information in the Learn this! box. Then find one example of each expression in the dialogue in exercise 1.



Expressions with look

look (a bit/just) like + noun/person

look + adjective

look as though/as if/like + clause

4	Complete the sentences with the correct form of one of the
	expressions with look from exercise 3.

1 Did you see Naomi at the party? She ______ beautiful in that long dress.

2 She doesn't _____ an Australian. She _____ Chinese.

3 They don't _____ they're working very hard.

4 You _____ a film star in that jacket.

5 It _____ it's going to rain.

5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Describe somebody from the photo in exercise 1 using an expression from exercise 3. Can your partner identify the person?

He looks as though he's laughing.

Is it the boy on the left in the white shirt?

6 1.06 Listen. Label the people in the photo in exercise 1 with the names in the box. How are they connected to Connor? What else can you remember about them?

Kim Mike Sandra

Listening tip

Don't worry if there are words in the recording that you don't understand. You don't have to understand every word to complete the task.

7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue about the photo below.

Student A: You know the people in the photograph. Invent names and decide how they are connected with you/each other (friends? family members?).

Student B: You don't know any of the people in the photograph. Ask Student A about them. Use phrases from exercise 2 to identify who you are talking about.



SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class.

Who's the guy on the right, the one in the green shirt?

That's my cousin, Danny.

Dear Luc.

- Ho! I'm your exchange student from England. My name is George and I'm 16 years old. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Bournemouth, a town on the south coast of England.
- I'm enclosing a photo of me and my sisters, Lizzio

and Diana. Lizzie is the one on the left with long, blonde hair. ² The other girl is a friend of Diana's from school.

- I'm in year 11 at Lidborough School, It's a small, private school just outside Bournemouth. The studying for twelve GCSEs, including French, of course! My best subject is probably English, and my worst is maths.
- Tim really looking forward to visiting you in Bordeaux next month and meeting your family. " What kind of school do you go to? Please write soon and send a photo too!
 Best wishes

George Kelp

- Dear Gloria
- im Sarah Jones, your
 new exchange student
 im II and I live on a
 farm in a small village
 in central Wales with my
 mum and dad. [] |
 haven't got any brothers
 or sisters.



- Rales is part of the UK, but it's got its own culture and language.
 Most people in the virlage here are Welsh speakers, and my
 grandparents speak it all the time. *
- The got lots of hobbies and interests. I go horse tiding a lot, and I was hockey and baddinton. I'm into rock music and my favourite trands are the Stereophonics and the Super Furry Animals. "
- Eryway, that's all for now Please write soon and tell me about your ite in Spain By the way, do you live near the beach? And what's the weather usually like in May?

Regards

Teran

Tim sending you a photo of me and my burse, Aleo,

- 1 Quickly read the letters. Where do Luc, George, Gloria and Sarah live?
- 2 Identify the topic of each paragraph in the letters. Choose from these topics.
 - a lasking for information about the other person
 - b school
 - c sports, hobbies and interests
 - d describing your own country/town/village
 - e introduction and general personal details
 - f friends and girlfriend/boyfriend
 - g describing a photo of your family
- 3 Match the sentences (a–g) with the gaps in the letters (1–7). Use your answers to exercise 2 to help you.
 - a Have you got any brothers or sisters?
 - b Diana is the one in the blue top.
 - c But don't worry my parents and I speak English at home!
 - d Both bands are from Wales, of course.
 - e. Our house is about 2 km from the sea.
 - f My grandparents live in the same village, so I see them all the time.
 - g There are only about 200 students, and the facilities are really good.

Writing tip

When you write a letter, organise the information or your arguments. Each paragraph should focus on one key topic.

Imagine you have a new exchange student. Plan a letter introducing yourself to him or her. Choose topics for paragraphs 2 and 3 from the list in exercise 2. Make notes for each paragraph.

Paragraph 1: introduction, general personal details
Paragraph 2:
Paragraph 3:
Paragraph 4: Asking for information about the other person

Now write a four-paragraph letter of 120–150 words using your plan from exercise 4.

Get ready for your EXAM 1

1	Get neady to LISTEN	Choose four	adjectives l	from the b	юх
	that best describe the	clothes you	like to wea	r.	

bright casual comfortable conservative exotic practical shocking spotless vivid

2 Do the Listening exam task.

LISTENING exam task

Listen to part of a radio programme. Decide whether the information in each sentence (1–8) is true, false or not stated in the programme.

True False Not stated

- Everybody's 'wardrobe personality' is one of four types: Dramatic, Classic, Romantic or Natural.
- Dramatic personalities like to be looked at.
- Dramatics do not wear designer clothes.
- Classic personalities enjoy quiet hobbies like gardening.
- Classics spend the most on clothes of any type.
- 6 Make-up is not very important for Romantic personalities.
- 7 Natural personalities are comfortable in either casual or formal clothes.
- 8 'Extreme Naturals' risk dressing too casually for some situations.
- 3 Read the text in the Use of English exam task, ignoring the gaps. According to the text, what is the problem with 'size zero' fashion models?
 - a. They make ordinary clothes look ridiculous.
 - b They put their own health at risk and set a bad example to young girls.
 - The top fashion designers do not like designing clothes for models who are very thin.
- 4 Do the Use of English exam task.

USE OF ENGLISH exam task

Complete the text with the correct words (A, B or C).

Size zero

At the age of 22, Luisel Ramos was \(^1\) a life that many girls and young women would envy. She was a top fashion model who spent her time \(^2\) from country to country to take part in major fashion shows. She was beautiful and \(^1\) tall and thin. She was earning a lot of money, too. But she was \(^2\) and wanted \(^1\) an even bigger success in the world of fashion. In the months leading up to Uruguay's Fashion Week

in 2006. Luisel followed a strict diet of lettuce leaves and Diet Coke. By the time the fashion show arrived, she weighed around 45 kilos, despite being 1.75 metres. § ______. Unfortunately, she didn't stop § ______ about the harm the diet was doing to her health.

The audience cheered as Luise! Ramos walked down the catwalk waaring the latest fashions from some of the world's *_______ designers. But as she was returning to her dressing room, she collapsed and died. Doctors blamed her death on her very low bodyweight and lack of essential nutrition.

A month "Luisel's death, the Madrid Fashion Week banned models who were too thin from taking part, and Italian fashion designers also refused "Least size zero" models. People often blame the fashion industry for using unhealthily thin models, thereby encouraging girls to become obsessed with their weight, but perhaps the tragic death of Luisel Ramos was a turning point

	1	A	making	В	doing	C	leading
	2	Α	In fly	В	flying	C	was flying
	3	A	styled	В	styling	C	stylish
	4	A	relaxed	В	ambitious	C	modest
	5	A	be	В	being	C	to be
	6	A	height	В	of height	C	tall
	7	A	thought	В	to think	C	thinking
	8	A	top	В	highest	C	most
	9	A	later	В	atterwards	C	after
1	0	Α	to use	В	using	C	Lse

- 5 Get ready to SPEAK Describe the first photo in the Speaking exam task below. Say:
 - · where the women are
 - what they are doing.
 - · how they are feeling and why
- 6 Do the Speaking exam task,

SPEAKING exam task





Compare and contrast the two photos. Answer the questions.

- 1 Who is buying clothes 'off the peg'? Who is having clothes specially made?
- 2 What are the advantages and disadvantages of having clothes specially made for you?
- 3 Which shopping experience would you find more enjoyable, and why?
- 4 Do you preferring shopping alone or with somebody clse? Give reasons.

- 1 Work in pairs. Would either of you like to be famous? Give reasons. Then tell the class.
- 2 Do the Reading exam task.

READING exam task

Read the text. Match the headings (A-F) with the paragraphs (1-5). There is one heading that you don't need.

FADING RED CARPET

- Any movie fan who is worth their DVD collection knows what a good movie premiere night is like.

 Cameras flashing, fans cheering, and in the middle—the famous red carpet. One by one, the greatest names of Hollywood get out of their sparkling limousines and walk down this carpet to the most stunning of parties. And, of course, everyone wishes they could be there. Well, except for the stars themselves.
- Although it may look like they are going to have a ball, for most movie people a night like this is still work. First of all they are in the public eye, even if the fans and the paparazzi are kept at a distance. The smile still has to be kept fixed on their faces, no matter how exhausted they might be. And, if they have the misfortune to slip on the wet floor, they can be sure to find a snap of that moment in the papers the next day.
- Then there is the ever-present gossip. If you arrive together, you're probably dating each other. If you arrive separately, pose for the pictures separately, and finally leave separately, it is absolute proof that you're dating each other. Your every move, smile and gesture will be noticed and commented on, and, most likely, misinterpreted.
- The funny thing is that the least important part of the night is the showing of the movie itself. Most of the people present, from the crew to the critics, have already seen it anyway. The premiere night of the movie *The Fantastic Four* had to do without the movie because the film projector broke down, but nobody complained. It is the crowd, the location and the money that you spend that this is really all about.
- So why do they do it? Well, misance or not, it is good publicity. All the media are there, willing to give you a hit of their airtime or column space. Besides, it is madition. Bothersome or not, it just has to take place. As one Hollywood director says, 'If my studio told me I couldn't have a premiere for my film, I'd be offended.'
- A Reasons to go
- A typical opening night
- On everyone's lips
- D All work no fun
- E. Where to go
- F What counts

- 3 Match the highlighted words in the text with the definitions below.
 - 1 everything that is written or said about somebody or something by the media
 - 2 happy shouting
 - 3 a photo
 - 4 people who write reviews
 - 5 well known to many people because of the media.
 - 6 things that are said about somebody's private life which are not always true
 - 7 the people with technical skills involved in making a movie
 - 8 a place where an event takes place
 - 9 the first time a movie is shown
- 4 Get ready to SPEAK Work in pairs. Talk about your favourite movie stars. Why do you like them? What movies were they in?
- 5 Oo the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Work in pairs. Imagine you are going to the cinema together this evening. Discuss the list of films and agree which one you would like to see.

The Guns of Gettysburg

7.20

American Civil War epic starring George Clooney. Contains some violence: 154 pnly, 205 minutes.

Super Doc

6.15 & 9.15

Jim Carrey comedy about a man pretending to be a doctor who discovers a real talent for saving lives. Suitable for families, 100 minutes.

Space Station Mars

7.30 & 10.30

Sci-fi thriller starring Kirsten Dunst. A space station is under threat, but does the danger come from outside or from inside the station itself? Suitable for 15+, 130 minutes.

La Sonrisa del Diablo (The Devil's Smile)

11.15

Mexican love story about petrayal and forgiveness. English subtitles. Not suitable for young children. 85 minutes.

Memories

How did you feel?

THIS UNIT INCLUDES •• • •

Vocabulary • feetings • noun formation • adjective prefixes • adjectives + prepositions

sequencing words * -ed/-ing adjectives * phrasa, verbs

Grammar • past tense contrast • used to • exclamatory sentences

Speaking • talking about feelings • describing early memories.

discussing important days • describing and reacting to a story

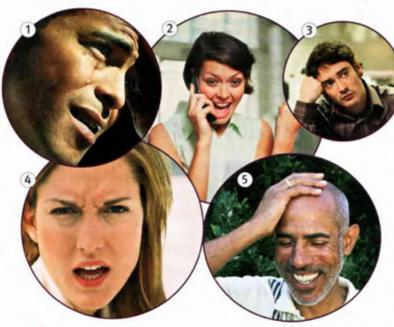
Writing • a narrative

I can describe how I feet.

1 Look at the photos. How do you think the people feel? Use the adjectives in the box.

Feelings amused bored confused delighted depressed disappointed embarrassed excited fed-up guilty homesick imitated jealous nervous pleased relieved scared shocked upset

I think the man in photo 1 looks ...



2 Work in pairs. Mime adjectives from exercise 1. Can your partner guess?

Are you disappointed? No. Try again.

Are you fed up?

Yes, I am. Your turn.

- 3 Choose the best adjective (a, b or c) to describe each person's feelings.
 - It was a difficult and important exam and I passed it.
 - a confused
- b relieved

b nervous

- c excited
- 2 I was away from home and I missed my family.
- 3. The shop assistant was very rude to me.
 - a shocked

a bored

- b scared
- c pleased

c homesick

- 4 We lost the match the other team scored in the last minute.
- a nervous **b** confused c disappointed 5 I forgot to give my brother a message, and he missed his
 - friend's party.

 a jealous b guilty c delighted.
- 6 My boy'riend spent the evening talking to another gir).
 - a jealous b amused c excited
- My dad decided to dance at my birthday party, but he's a terrible dancer.
 - a scared b embarrassed c depressed
- 8 I didn't get an invitation to the party. Everyone else dic.
 - all pset birelieved cibored
- 4 1.08 Listen to five people recalling events in their life. Match the speakers (1–5) with five of the events (a–f).
 - all my first day at primary school | | d | getting lost
 - b an argument with a friend
- e receiving a great present
- c an important exam result
- f a family wedding

Speaker 1	Speaker 3		Speaker 5	
Speaker 2	Speaker 4	[

5 1.08 Listen again. How did the people in exercise 4 feel? Choose the best adjective from the box for each speaker.

delighted embarrassed jealous relieved scared

- 6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Which of the events in exercise 4 have happened to you? How did you feel at the time?
- 7 When did you last feel like this? Make notes for each adjective.
 - 1 irritated

3 delighted

- 4 scared
- 7 relieved 8 bored

- 2 nervous
- 5 shocked
- 6 confused
- 1 innitated eleter borrowed M73 player
- SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions using the adjectives in exercise 7.

When did you last feel irritated?

I last felt irritated when my sister borrowed my MP3 player without asking.

Vocabulary Builder 2.1: Noun formation: p. 129

Past tense contrast

- Read about one of Tom's early memories. How do you think these people felt?
 - a form **b** Tom's aunt and uncle **c** Tom's parents



was about five years old. My aunt and uncle had come to visit is with their son, Joshua. While my parents were chatting to my aurt and uncle, my cousin and I went outside to play. It was arring and the sky was grey. We sat down on the docretep and saled throwing stones at a tree in our front garden. I threw a same, it bounced off the tree, landed on my aunt and uncle's arrand smashed the windscreen. I couldn't believe what I had some. When my aunt and uncle came outside, I was staring at the some windscreen.

- * What tenses are the verbs in blue in the text: past simple, past continuous or past perfect?
- Read and complete the rules in the Learn this! box with the names of the tenses. Find examples of each rule in the text.

Past tenses

When we are parrating events in the past

- 1 We can use the ______ to set the scene. It was raining and the wind was blowing.
- 2 We use the _____ for actions or events that happened one after another.

I got home, sat down and turned on the TV.

- 3 We use the ______ for an action or event that interrupted a background event; we use the _____ for the background event.

 While I was having dinner, the phone rang.

 What were you doing when I saw you?
- 4 We use the _______ to talk about an event that happened before another event in the past.

 I wasn't hungry because I had already eaten a pizza.
- Grammar Builder 2.1: Past tenses: p. 110
- Work in pairs. Discuss the difference in meaning between the sentences.
 - 1 When I got to the party, Kim opened his presents.
 - 2. When I got to the party, Kim was opening his presents.
 - 3 When I got to the party, Kim had opened his presents.

- 5 Choose the correct tenses.
 - 1 Dad broke / was breaking a glass while he was doing / had done the washing up.
 - 2 The ground was wet when I was leaving / left the house in the morning. It rained / had rained during the night.
 - 3 'Why were you out in the rain?' 'I brought / was bringing in the washing.'
 - 4 When I arrived / was arriving home, my mum helped / had helped me with my homework.
 - 5 After we worked / had worked for an hour, we stopped / were stopping for a rest.
 - 6 Tom was driving / had driven home when he was crashing / crashed the car.
 - 7 My dad was getting up / got up, had / was having breakfast and went / had gone to work,
 - 8 I had / was having a headache because I wasn't eating / hadn't eaten since the day before.
- 6 Complete the text. Use the past simple, the past continuous and the past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

Sylvia's earliest memory

U
It was about a week after riv third birthday. My zunt 1 (give) me
a view dolf as a present, and while Γ^2 (play) with it, Γ^3 .
(notice) that my other dolls were all quite dirty in comparison. I 422
(decide) to give them a bath, When L ² (wash) them all, L ⁴
(take) their outside and 7 (suf) them on the grass, 9 was a warm.
day and the sun 8 (shine), While Γ^9 (wait) for the dollar
to dry, Γ^{10} (hear) a shout from made, so Γ^{11} (look) in
through the vindow. Water 12 (pour) down from the kitchen colling
ornin the figor, . 10 (not term) the tape off in the bathroom, I
remember that my dad was really angry because he ¹⁴ (decorate)
Ine kindhen the previous week,

- 7 Write notes about one of your earliest memories. Use the questions to help you.
 - 1 How old were you? Where were you? Who were you with? How were you feeling?
 - 2 Describe the scene. What were you/other people doing? What was the weather like?
 - 3 What happened? Describe the events. How did you feel?
- SPEAKING Tell the class about your earliest memory.

One day when I was about six years old, ...

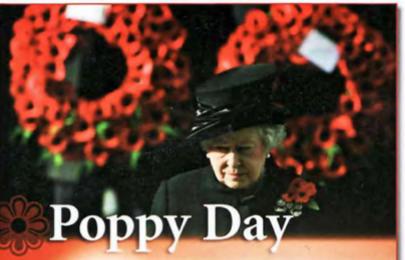
Speaking tip

Do not read directly from your notes. You can look at your notes from time to time, but when you are speaking, look at your audience. Always speak slowly and clearly.

Remembering the past

I can discuss the denificance of important days.

Quickly read the text. Underline the part of the text that talks about the ceremony in the photo.



Poppy Day, 11 November, is the day when people in Britain remember the soldiers that died in the First World War (1914–18), the Second World War (1939–45) and all other wars since. The first Poppy Day was in 1921. The First World War had ended three

- 5 years earlier, but it was still very difficult, often impossible, for ex soldiers in Britain to find employment. So some of them started making and selfing red paper poppies. They gave the money that they raised to ex-soldiers who were disabled or unemployed, and to the families of soldiers who had died. The choice of flower
- was significant. During the war, the soldiers had noticed poppies growing every year on the battlefields in Belgium and the north of France. A well-known poem from that time, written by a Canadian soldier, begins with the lines

In Flanders* fields the poppies blow

15 Between the crosses, row on row,

That mark our place"; ...

In the days leading up to Poppy Day, about 32 million people in Britain buy and wear small poppies. Some people choose to wear white poppies because they think that white symbolises

- 20 peace. Then, at 11 a.m. on 11 November (at the moment when the First World War ended) there's a two minute silence. Many people stop and think quietly about the soldiers who died. There are ceremonies at war memorials in towns and villages all over the country. The most important ceremony is in London, when
- 25 the Queen and the Prime Minister lay wreaths of poppies at the Genotaph, a monument to soldiers who died in battle.

"(Flanders = the north of Belgium; our place = our graves)

Read the text. Choose the best answers.

- 1 On 11 November people remember
 - a soldiers who have died since 1921.
 - b soldiers who have died in wars since 1914.
 - c soldiers who died in the two world wars.

- 2 Why did ex-soldiers start making poppies?
 - a Because they couldn't find a job.
 - b Because they were disabled.
 - c. Because they didn't have families.
- 3 They chose to make poppies because
 - althey had seen poppies growing on the battlefields.
 - b a Canadian soldier had written a poem about popples.
 - cipoppies are popular in Belgium and the north of France.
- 4 On Poppy Day
 - a 32 million people sell pooples.
 - bipeople wear red or white poppies.
 - c people buy and wear 32 million white poppies.
- 5. During the two-minute silence people
 - a walk to a ceremony in their town or village.
 - b think about the moment the First World War ended.
 - cilistop and think about soldiers who have died.
- 1.09 Listen to people talking about Poppy Day. Tick the people who wear a poppy.

	Speaker 1		Speak	er 2		Spea	ker 3			
4	Q 1.09	Comple	te the	senten	ces.	Then	listen	again	and	check,
	4 1 .1 - 1							1-		

- 1 I think it's very _____ to remember the soldiers who ____ in wars.
 - 2 They _____ the ultimate sacrifice they _____ their lives for other people.
 - 3 I think we need to stop thinking about the _____ and think about the _____.
 - 4 We should try to _____ wars, not _____ them.
 - 5 It's important to look after _____ when they come home.
 - 6 Soldiers risk their lives to _____ the people at _____.
- 5 Say if you agree or disagree with each sentence in exercise 4.
- 6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.
 - 1 Is it important to remember soldiers who died fighting for our country? Why?/Why not?
 - 2 Is there a day in your country when people remember soldiers who died in wars?



We Vocabulary Builder 2.2: Adjective prefixes: p. 129

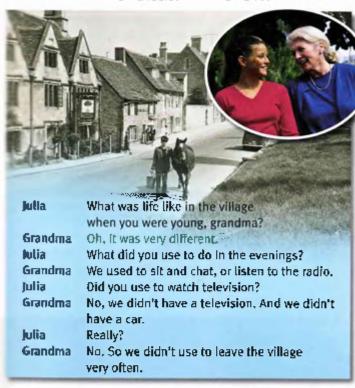


1.10 Read and listen to the conversation. When Julia's grandma was young, did she have:

a a car?

b a radio?

c a TV?



- Underline all the examples of used to in the conversation in exercise 1.
- Read the Learn this! box. Choose the correct words in the rule and complete the examples.

used to

- 1 We use used to for past / present / future habits or situations that are now the same / different, My dod 1 _____ smoke, but he doesn't now.
- 2 The form of *used to* is the same for all persons. affirmative

My parents 2_____ live in London.

negative

13 _____ have a DVD player.

interrogative

_____you 5_____ walk to school? Yes, I did./ No, I didn't.

Where 6_____ Danny 7_____ live?

- 1.11 PRONUNCIATION Listen and repeat the sentences. How is the 's' pronounced in used to: /s/ or /z/? How is to pronounced?
 - We used to sit and chat.
 - 2 We didn't use to leave the village very often.
 - 3 Did you use to watch television?

5 Complete the sentences with the affirmative, negative or interrogative form of used to and the verbs in the box.

	oe.	do	like	live	speak	work
						i, but she hates it now. , before she tived in Londor
	5he					but now she goes running
4		ry da	•	any It:	ılian, bu	it now she's almost fluert.
5	Му	mun	п	ir	r a bank,	, but she's unemployed now.
6		ress:		-	a wan	tress before she became an
		Era	mmar	Reild	or 7 2 m	read to a 111

6 1.12 Listen to a description of a ghost town. Why did it become a ghost town?



- - 1 it has / doesn't have a population of 2,000 now.
 - People work / don't work in the gold mines now.
 - 3 People eat / don't eat in the saloon now.
 - 4 People buy / don't buy snacks at the coffee shop.
 - 5 Tourists visit / don't visit the town now.
 - 6 People can / can't stay at the hotel now.
 - 7 There is / isn't a road.
- Rewrite the sentences in exercise 7 so that they are true about Fairview in the past. Use the affirmative or negative form of used to.
 - If used no have a population of 2,000.
- Work with a partner. Think about life in your country either 20, 50 or 100 years ago. Make notes using these headings.
 - 1 transport
- 3 entertainment
- 5 politics

- 2 work
- 4 education
- 6 food and drink
- 10 SPEAKING Tell the class about your ideas.

A hundred years ago, there were hardly any cars. People used to walk ...



I con understand a magazine article about a man who lost his memory.

1 Read the text quickly. Which sentence is not true?

- 1 Doug lost his memory and has never recovered it.
- 2 Doug lost his memory but later remembered who he was,
- 3 Doug lost his memory but has found his family and friends again.

Staff at the hospital found a phone number in Doue's

2 Put the events in the correct order.

	bag.	
b	Doug woke up on a Subway train in New York.	
¢	The police sent Doug to hospital.	
d	Doug met his family and old friends.	
ę	Doug worked in Paris.	
f	An old friend made a documentary about Doug's	
	experlences.	
\$	Nadine took him home.	
h	Doug went to a police station.	
İ	Doug's ex-girlfriend, Nadine, identified him,	

3 Are the sentences true or false?

- Doug was wearing warm clothes when he woke up on the subway.
- Very few people have ever had such serious memory loss as Doug.
- 3 The hospital authorities dien't want to release Doug until they knew who he was.
- 4 Doug discovered that he was quite rich.
- Doug recognised his family and friends immediately.
- 6 Doug's sisters think that his personality has changed since his memory loss.

4 Match the words (1-12), which are highlighted in the text, with their nearest equivalents (a-1).

- 1 skull a beach shoes 2 flip-floos b memory loss 3 rucksack c confused 4 baffled d beautifu! 5 tag e send home 6 amnesia f shown 7 discharge g accompanied 8 at once h head 9 escorted 1 confident 10 stunning i bag 11 outgoing k immediately 12 portrayed l label
 - Adjectives * prepositions

 Some adjectives are followed by certain prepositions when ased before a noun or pronoun.

 John is nervous about his exams.

 I'm feet up with this book.

 Jane's parents are very proud of her.

5 Read the Learn this! box. Find the sentences in the text and complete them with the correct prepositions.

The doctors were surprised ______ the severity of his memory loss. (paragraph 3)
 He was worded _____ meeting his family and friends. (paragraph 6)
 According to them, he has become much more relaxed and isn't scared _____ showing his feelings. (paragraph 6)
 He's happy _____ his new life. (paragraph 7)

Vocabulary Builder 2.3: Adjectives + prepositions: p. 1

- 6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Complete each sentence in three different ways. Use your Imagination. Then tell your partner.
 - 1 I was really surprised at ...
 - 2 I was worried about ...
 - 3 I'm really scared of ...
 - 4 I'm very happy about ...

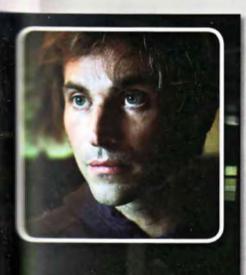


Unknown white male

On 3 July 2003, a 35-year-old Englishman called Doug Bruce walked into a police station in Coney Island, New York, and told the police that he did not know his own name. He had woken up a few minutes earlier on a subway train, with bumps on his and a headache, and had found he had no idea where he was going, where he had been, or who he was. 'I was scared,' he said later, when talking about the experience. 'I didn't know anything. It was frightening, it was like being in the darkness.'

Doug went to a police station because he had nowhere else to go, He was wearing a T-shirt, shorts and police and he had a present with a few possessions in it: a Spanish phrase book, a bunch of keys and a map of New York. The police were to we'd never had anything like this before, says Lieutenant Pete Pena. They sent Doug to Coney Island Hospital. On his name to wrote 'Unknown white male'.

The doctors were surprised at the severity of his memory loss. Although Doug could form sentences without difficulty, he remembered nothing about his own past and seemed to know little about the world. One specialist at the hospital, Dr Leonid Vorobyev, admitted that he had only ever seen such serious in the movies and in my textbooks'. Doug was diagnosed as suffering from 'total retrograde amnesia', which is extremely rare.



book in his rucksack. It was the number of an ex-girlfriend's mother, but she didn't know who he was. However, when Doug spoke to his ex-girlfriend, Nadine, she recognised his voice work. 'Is that you, Doug?' she asked. 'I don't know,' came the reply. Nadine went to the hospital, told the doctors who Doug was, and escarted him home.
'Home' turned out to be a granting apartment in downtown Manhattan, which he shared with two dogs and three parrots. Doug discovered that he

The hospital authorities would not discharge Doug until he had been

identified. Eventually, hospital staff found a phone number inside the phrase

'Home' turned out to be a **exercise** apartment in downtown Manhattan, which he shared with two dogs and three parrots. Boug discovered that he had previously lived in Paris, where he had made a lot of money working at the stock exchange.

Now that Doug had discovered his Identity, he had to cope with other challenges. He was worried about meeting his family and friends. They seemed like strangers to him. His sisters told him that he had changed: before his memory loss, he had been very sociable and proposed, but rarely showed his emotions. According to them, he has now become much more relaxed and isn't scared of showing his feelings.

For Doug, life has started all over again. He has tasted chocolate mousse and strawberries for what he believes is the first time. He has seen snow fall, and fireworks explode 'for the first time'. He's happy with his new life. His story has now been portrayed on film. An old friend of his, director Rupert Murray, has made a documentary about Doug's extraordinary experiences called *Unknown White Male*.



Martin I remember my first date with a girl really well.

Julia How interesting! Were you excited?

Martin I was feeling more nervous than excited, to be honest, as I'd asked out the most popular girl in the school. I couldn't believe that she had agreed to go out with me. I was very shy, and not at all

confident.

Julia So what happened?

Martin At first, nothing. I'd made a list of topics to talk

about. But the list was in my pocket and I couldn't remember any of the topics, so we walked to the

café in complete silence.

Julia How embarrassing! What happened next?

Martin It got even more embarrassing. I got her an orange

Juice from the bar, and I decided to try to be funny. So I put the juice on a tray, and I carried it over to the table with one hand like a waiter. Then I tripped and I just threw the juice all over her. She was

really shocked.

Julia Oh no! What a disaster!

Martin In the end, I just took her home - again in silence -

and I never had the courage to speak to her again.

Julia Poor you! But - how funny!

1.13 Read and listen to the dialogue. In your own words, explain what two things went wrong on Martin's date.

Tick (/) the sequencing words that Julia and Martin use.

after a few minutes a few minutes later
after that 🔲 at first 🗌 finally 📜 first 🖳
in the end later on next then

Exclamatory sentences

- 1 We can use exclamatory sentences beginning What ... or How ... to react strongly to something.
- 2 We use how with an adjective.

 How wonderful! How unpleasant!
- 3 We use what with a noun, even if it has an adjective before it.

What a singer! What an amazing goal!

3 Read the Learn this! box. Find four exclamatory sentences in the dialogue in exercise 1.

• 8 Grammar Builder 2.3: Exclamatory sentences: p. 111

- 4 1.14 Listen to two dialogues. What are they about? Choose from a-e.
 - a going to a great party
- d incetting a new family member
- b meeting a celebrity
- e staying at an amazing hotel
- c starting at a new school
- 5 1.14 Listen again to the dialogues. Choose the best answers.

Dialogue 1

- 1 Zoe's birthday
 - a was fantastic all day.
 - b started badly but was fantastic in the end.
 - c started well but was terrible in the end.
- 2 Zoe and her friend saw a film at
 - a the first cinema they went to.
 - b the second cinema they went to.
 - c the third cinema they went to.
- 3 Johnny Depp
 - a sat next to Zoe and her friend in the cinema.
 - b gave Zoe and her friend tickets for the film.
 - c bought Zoe and her friend drinks and popcorn.

Dialogue 2

- 4 Who has just had a baby?
 - a Emily's sister.
 - b Emily Rose.
 - c Patrick's sister.
- 5 When Patrick first saw the baby,
 - a he was surprised.
 - b he wasn't very interested.
 - the immediately thought she was beautiful.
- 6 Patrick felt proud because
 - a Emily Rose was so cute.
 - b his friends are silly.
 - c he's Emily Rose's uncle.
- 6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Make notes about a real or imagined memorable event (e.g. a birthday, a journey, a holiday, your first day at school).
 - 1 Where were you?/What were you doing?/Who were you with?/ How old were you?
 - 2 What happened? Describe the events. How did people react?/ How did you feel?
 - 3 What happened in the eno?
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Use your notes to prepare a dialogue.
 Use sequencing words from exercise 2 and exclamatory sentences
- 8 SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class.
 - Vocabulary Builder 2.4: -ed/-ing adjectives: p. 129

- Read the story. Which of these things did Joe not do?
 - 1 go out with two school friends
 - 2 have a fairly quiet evening
 - 3 have dinner in a restaurant
 - 4 meet some girls
 - 5 buy cinema tickets
 - 6 see a film
 - 7 go to a night club
 - 8 hear live music
 - 9 phone Anna
 - 10 bump Into Anna again.



A great night out

by Joe

Last year, I went out to celebrate my birthday with two other boys from my class. We were planning a fairly quiet evening – a quick pizza followed by a film at the cinema. However, the evening turned but to be much more exciting than we expected!

While we were eating our dinner, a group of three girls came into the restaurant and sat down at the next table. We started chatting and found out that one of them – Anna – was celebrating her birthday that evening too. She suggested going out together – all six of us – after our meal. They seemed really nice, so we agreed. We decided not to go the cinema, even though we already had tickets for the film. Instead, we set off towards the town centre where there's a night club that plays really good music. We turned up just as a live band was starting to play! We danced for hours and had a great time with our new friends.

At the end of the night, Anna gave me her mobile phone number and talked about meeting up again. Unfortunately, I couldn't call her because liost the number. I think I threw it away by mistake.

I still think about that evening quite often. It's a shame that I lost Anna's number, but maybe I'll bump into her and her friends one evening and we'll all go out again. I hope so!

2	Complete the paragraph	plan.	Use	ohrases	in the	box

	description of the events how you feel about it now setting the scene what happened afterwards
	Paragraph 1 Introduction: Paragraph 2 Main body: Paragraph 3 Follow-up: Paragraph 4 Conclusion:
3	Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from the story.
	 Let's go for dinner tonight. Out new teacher turned to be from Australia. Sit = I've got some amazing news! Did you find her name? She usually sets for work at 6.00 am. You've turned late for class again; The CD was broken so I threw it I bumped a friend from primary school yesterday.
	Vocabulary Builder 2.5: Phrasal verbs: p. 130
	Writing tip: conjunctions
	We can often join short sentences together by using a conjunction. The simplest conjunction is and. I left school, i walked home, I left school and walked home, Try to use these other conjunctions as well, to join short sentences and improve the style of your writing:
	as because but even though since so though whereas while
ě	Read the writing tip above. Which conjunctions from the list can you find in Joe's story?
5	Use conjunctions from the writing tip to complete the sentences. Sometimes more than one answer is possible. 1 I listened to music walked to the shops. 2 I'm not going to the night club it's too expensive. 3 My dad gave me a present passed my exam. 4 He was still hungry, he had caten a whole pizza. 5 I'll be back late, con't wait up for me.
5	You are going to write a narrative called 'A terrible night out' In pairs, think of all the things that could possibly go wrong

7 Plan your narrative. Make notes using ideas from exercise 6 and following the paragraph plan in exercise 2.

during a night out. Make a list,

Write your narrative using your notes from exercise 7.
Remember to use conjunctions to improve the style of your writing.

LANGUAGE REVIEW 1-2

Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the words to make adjectives to describe clothes.
 - 1 st__p.
- 4 h
- 2 c___k
- 5 a .. t_..
- 3 5__ n_
- 6 m... h

Mark

- /6
- 2 Choose the correct words.
 - 1 Jacob passed all his exams. He felt relieved / upset.
 - 2 We waited for ages. We felt fed up / pleased.
 - 3 Leah made her sister cry. She felt guilty / homesick.
 - 4 Charlie watched TV all day. He felt confused / bored.
 - 5 Amelia went to school wearing different socks. She folt delighted / embarrassed.





Grammat

- 3 Complete the sentences with the present simple or the present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.
 - 1 Josh ______ (no! like) ir eat. He's a vegetarian.
 - 2 Abigail ______ (catch) the bus every day at 7.30 a.m.
 - 3 1 ______ (meet) Liam tomorrow to finish our science project.
 - 4 Can you hear Connor? He ______ (sing) in the
 - shower again.
 5 I'm fed up. My sister ______ (always / borrow) my
 - 6 We ______ (stay) with my grandmother while the builders are in our house.

Mark /6

- 4 Complete the sentences with the past simple, past continuous or past perfect form of the verbs in brackets.
 - 1 Lucy was crying because she ______ (lose) her bag.
 - 2 We ______ (call) the police because a strange man was following us.
 - 3 Harry opened the front door and (go) inside.
 - 4 When William fell off his chair, everybody (laugh).
 - 5 Joseph stayed at home because he ____ (break) his les.
 - 6 Ca'tlin _____ (do) her homework when her boyfriend called.

Mark



- 5 Rewrite the sentences using the negative or the interrogative form of used to.
 - 1 Tused to have a path every hight. (?)
 - Did you nee to have a bath every might?

 2. Mila used to watch cartoons on TV. (?)
 - 3 We used to go abroad on holiday. ()
 - 4 | Lused to wear flowery dresses. (-)
 - Alex used to sleep in the same room as his brother. (?)
 - 6 They used to live in the city centre. (?)

Mark

/5

Everyday English

6 Complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

back from look like looks nice

- Girl What's this photo?
- Boy It's our weekend in Berlin.
- Girl You 2____ you're having fun. Who's the boy in the red trousers?
- Boy He's my Iriend Goorge, Ho 3 ... a bit like Jude Law.
- Girl Yes, you're right! is your girlfriend in the photo?
- Boy Yes. She's the one at the 4______ in the yellow top.
- Girl She looks '_____

Mark

/5

- 7 Put the lines (a-e) in the correct order to complete the dialogue.
 - a. So what did your mum do in the end?
 - b I got really upset because my mum wouldn't let me take my teddy bear.
 - c Poor you! What a sname!
 - d Really? What happened?
 - e Tknow. Foried and cried and refused to leave the house without it.

Boy Tremember my first day at school as if it was only yesterday.

Gfrl

Boy

Girl

Boy F

Girl

Boy Well, she had to give in and let me take it, but she wasn't happy.

Mark



Total

/38

SKILLS ROUND-UP 1-2

Speaking

1 Look at the photo. Describe the people and the clothes.



Reading

2 Read the letter quickly. Find the names of two of the people in the photo in exercise 1. Who are the other two?

- 3 Read the letter again. Are the sentences true or false?
 - 1 Marck and Sarah have never met face to face.
 - 2 Viasta used to live with Sarah's family.
 - 3 Sarah's house caught fire during a barbecue in the garden.
 - 4 Marek has nearly finished his university studies.
 - 5 He wants advice about finding a job in England for a year.
 - 6 Vlasta has not always had blond hair.

Listening

- 4 1.25 Listen to the phone conversation. Where is Marek going to stay when he arrives in England?
- 5 1.15 Listen again and complete the sentences,
 - Marek's sister teaches ______.
 - 2 Sarah's parents work for a _____ law firm.
 - 3 Marek is planning to arrive in England in the month of
 - 4 Marek hopes to find a room or flat on the _____.
 - 5 Sarah's _____ has just left home.
 - 6 Sarah's family live at 46 _____ Gardens.

Writing

6 Imagine you were a guest at the barbecue that Marek mentions in his letter. Write a narrative describing the events. Use the words and phrases below to help you

Verbs			
burn set fire (to	something)	put out a f	ire smoulder
Nouns			
fire engine siren	firefighters	hose	smoke

Dear Sarah

I kope you don't mind me writing to you. You probably don't remember me, but we met about three years ago. My sister Vlasta used to work as an au pair for the family next door to you, and I visited her for a week. We both went to a barbeque at your house. Your dad set fire to a tree in the back garden and had to call the fire brigade. I'm sure you remember that?

Anyway, I'm writing to you now because Ylasta remembers that your parents are both lawyers. I'm studying Law at university here in the Czech Republic. It's a five-year course, and I'm just about to finish my second year. I've decided to spend next year working in the LIK, partly to improve my English and partly to earn some money. Could your mum or dad give me any advice about how to get a job in a law firm? I'm prepared to do any kind of work - I don't mind making tea!

I'm enclosing a recent photo of me, Vlasta and two friends of ours. Vlasta is the girl with long, blond hair. (It used to be dark.) I'm the one on the left, with short, dark hair and a long-sleeved T-shirt.

Best wishes

Marek Zemani

3 Nine to five

The world of work

- 1 Make a list of jobs. How many can you think of in two minutes?
- 2 SPEAKING In your opinion, what is the most interesting job on your list, and why? Compare your ideas with the class.
 - Vocabulary Builder 3.1; Jobs and gender: p. 130
- 3 Read the adverts. Use the words in red to complete the vocabulary tables.

We are looking for ...

people to work part-time in our busy call centre. Working hours are 5 p.m. to 9 p.m., Monday to Friday. You will work in a small team, answering the phone and dealing with the public. You will earn £7.50 an hour. The work is challenging, but fun.

We need an experienced receptionist to work full-time in our bank. You will he in charge of the reception desk and your role will be to greet customers and answer queries. Applicants must be able to use a computer. You will work on your own, and will report directly to the manager. Salary negotiable

Labourers needed to work on a building site. 35-hour week. Skilled and unskilled workers required. No experience necessary - on-the-job training will be given.

Places of work		
1	office	studio
hospital	restaurant	surgery
2 centre	school	building 3
laboratory	shop	

Activities at work	
answer the 4	do manual work
be in ' of	deal with the 6
do paperwork	work on your 7
⁸ a computer	work in a 9
greet 10	

Describing work		
stressful	busy	fun
11	menfai	easy
boring	unskilled	:3
full-time	13	

THIS UNIT INCLUDES

Vocabulary • jobs and gender • places of work • activities at work • describing work • expressing an opinion • agreeing and disagreeing • agent nouns • phrasal verbs; separable and inseparable

Grammar • defining relative clauses • non-defining relative clauses

Speaking • discussing working abroad • discussing work and gender • a job interview **Writing •** a job application

I can task about jobs and work.

4 SPEAKING Look at the photos. Describe the jobs, using the words in the vocabulary tables in exercise 3 to help you.

I think the man in photo 1 is a ...

He's working in a ...

His job looks challenging.



- 5 \$\infty\$ 1.16 Listen to the game show, 'What's my job?'. What are the two jobs?
- 6 1.17 Complete the questions with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

anything clothes dangerous earn hands homes office outside sell travel

1 Do you usually work ______?

2 Do you buy or ______ anything?

3 Do you ______ a lot of money?

4 Do you wear special ______ for your work?

5 Is your job ______ ?

6 Do you visit people's _____ ?

7 Do you ______ a lot for work?

8 Do you work with your ____ ?

9 Do you make _____ ?

10 Do you work in an ______ ?

7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Play "What's my job?". Remember, you can only answer 'yes' or 'no'. Use the questions in exercise 6 and think of more questions using the vocabulary tables in exercise 3.

Read the text. What was bad about working as a water caddy?



GRAMMAR

The worst jobs in history: a water caddy

In 18th century England, there were no water pipes or taps in houses. In the countryside, people got their water from wells or rivers. But at this time. thousands were moving to cities where there was no easy water supply. A water caddy was a person-

who delivered water to people's homes. It was extremely hard work, and involved carrying a barrel of water which weighed about 30 kilos. And it could be dangerous, too, if you were taking water to somebody whose home was on the top floor!

Underline examples of who, whose, where and which in the text in exercise 1. Then complete the rules in the Learn this! box.

2	Relative pronouns	: who, whose, where and which
Ē	1 We use	for things and animals.
z	2 We use	for people.
3	3 We use	for places.
3)	4 We use	_ to indicate possession.

Complete the questions with who, whose, where and which. Then answer them.

1	What do you call a place people go to watch films?
2	What do you call a person job is to design buildings?
3	What do you call a woman takes process and serves
	food in a restaurant?
4	What do you call a camera records video pictures?
5	What do you call a shop you can buy all kinds of food
	and drink?
6	What do you call a person is in charge of a shop or a
	company?
7	What do you call a machine records TV programmes?
8	What do you call a person place of work is a surgery?

Read the Look put! box. In which sentences in exercise 3. could you use that?

Look out!

We often use that instead of which. In informal English, we can also use that instead of who.

5 Complete the text with who, whose, where and which.

The worst jobs in history: a link boy

In 18th Century London, the areas of the city people lived had



street lamps. However, poorer areas of the city were full of streets 2. _____ had no lights. And streets 3_ were dark were often full of muggers, murderers and other criminals! Rich people 4______journey bome at night passed through these poor areas needed to take some form of lighting with them. A link boy was a boy 5 showed rich people the way home through the back streets. The children 6_____ did this job needed to have a map of the city in their heads. They also needed to be aware of the dangers 7_____ might be around any dark corner. And the money was not good. The rich people 8____ lives the link boys made safer normally paid only one penny per trip.

- Decide who had the worse job: a water caddy or a link boy. Give reasons for your decision. Can you think of any jobs that are worse than both?
- Read the Learn this! box. Which relative clauses in exercise 5 are in the middle and which are at the end?

Defining relative clauses

A defining relative clause comes after a noun and tells us which person, thing or place we are talking about. It can be in the middle or at the end of a sentence. She's the vet who looked after my cat.

The hospital where my sister works is enormous.

Grammar Builder 3.1: Defining relative clauses: p. 111

SPEAKING Work in pairs. Take turns to define the words in the box. Your partner has to guess what you are defining.

a dentist a carpenter a journalist a laboratory a studio a building site an MP3 player an Italian a salary

It's a person who/whose ...

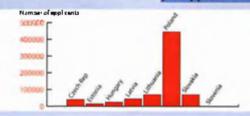
It's a place where ..

It's something which/whose. I can discuss the advantages and disadvantages of working abroad.

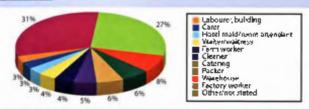
1 Look at the text and the charts. What is the most popular job for EU migrants in the UK?



If you walk into a factory or warehouse anywhere in Britain and listen to the conversations among the employees, you are likely to hear not just English but also Czech, Hungarian, Polish and a variety of other European languages. Since the EU welcomed ten new member states in 2004 and a further two in 2007, thousands of people from these countries have decided to come to the UK in search of better job opportunities.



Britain is one of only three EU countries that gave full rights to work to immigrants from the ten countries which joined in 2004. An independent survey of almost 2,200 British companies shows that 12% of employers now employ workers from these new EU states. Many are highly skilled; the stereotypical image of unskilled workers from 'new Europe' is not accurate. A third have taken jobs as administrators and supervisors. Only 4% work in construction.



Most of the migrant workers in Britain are young – 82% are aged between 18 and 34. Surveys suggest that the majority are happy with their new lives, but also plan to return to their native country at some point in the future.

- 1 Why can you hear so many different languages in an ordinary British factory?
- 2 In total, how many countries joined the EU during the period 2004 to 2007?
- 3 What are three most common nationalities for EU migrants in Britain?
- 3 Why is it easier for people from new member states to work in Britain than in most other EU countries?
- 6 What percentage of EU migrants work on farms?
- 7 What percentage of EU migrants are older than 34?
- 8 What is the long-term plan for most EU migrants?

3	Complete the definitions with the highlighted words from the text
	1 are people who do paperwork,
	2 are chances to find work,
	3 are people who work for a person or company.
	4 A is a place where goods are stored.
	5 are people who are in charge of a team at work.
	6 are people or companies who give work to other people
	7 are people who move to a country from another country

- 4 113 Listen to three recent immigrants talking about life in the UK, Which speaker (1-3) is having the worst experience?
- 5 Listen again and match each speaker (1-3) with two opinions (a-f).
 - You can earn a lot of money in Britain if you are prepared to work hard.
 - b It's easy to find menial jobs in Britain, but very difficult to find an Interesting job.
 - Most British people are happy to work with people from other countries.
 - British people are impatient if you can't speak good English.
 - Renting a flat is very expensive in Britain, so you have to share with other people.
 - f Some people in Britain are worried that immigrants from EU nations are taking all the jobs.
- SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of going to work abroad. Would you like to do it?

You can earn money.

Yes, but on the other hand, you might be lonely

Expressing an opinion

I think that ... In my opinion, ... In my view, ...

Agreeing and disagreeing

Yes, Lagree. That's right. I think so too.

I don't agree. On the other hand ...

That may be true, but ...

Vocabulary Builder 3.2: Agent nouns: p. 131

Non-defining relative clauses

Sead the text quickly. What is Walter O'Rourke's job, and way does he do it?



walter O'Rourke, who works as a ticket inspector on the sin New Jersey, is a rich man. In fact his salary, which is around \$50,000 a year, is just pocket money to Mr O'Rourke, whose investments earn him about \$2 million each year. So why does he choose to work? The answer is that Mr O'Rourke, who was horn in 1939, has always loved trains. For him, working on a crowded train in New Jersey is more fun than relaxing in Florida, where he has two houses. 'There's no place that I'd rather be,' he says. 'I don't need the money. I need the job.'

- Read the text again, Ignoring the relative clauses in red.
 Does the text make sense without them?
- Read the Learn this! box and choose the correct words to complete the rules. Use the relative clauses in red in exercise 1 to help you.

Non-defining relative clauses

- 1 A non-defining relative clause comes immediately before / after a noun and gives us information about that noun.
- 2 It adds extra information to the sentence. The sentence makes sense / does not make sense without it.

Macy's department store is one of the largest shops in the world. It's in New York.

Macy's department store, which is in New York, is one of the largest shops in the world.

3 It starts / ends with a comma, and starts / ends with a comma or a full stop.

Look out!

In non-defining relative clauses, we use who, whose, where and which, but we do not use that.

- 4 Complete the text with the relative clauses (a-f).
 - a which makes toys and games
 - b who has worked with Jack since 1975
 - c where his son and grandchildren live
 - d who will be 90 years old next month
 - e which started at just £4 a week
 - f who are planning a big 90th birthday party for him.

Jack Barnes, 1______ still gets up at seven o'clock every morning and catches the bus to work. He has been an employee at the J.B. Bates & Sons factory, 2_____, for more than 60 years. In that time, his salary, 2_____ has increased by 20,000% Jack's colleagues, 1_____, do not believe that Jack will ever retire. He loves his work too much, says Bill Tanner, 2____. The talks about moving to Australia, 3_____, but he'd never do it.



Grammar Builder 3.2: Non-defining relative clauses; p. 112

- 5 Combine the two simple sentences to make one sentence. Use a non-defining relative clause.
 - Her son works in a factory. Fe lives in Spain.
 ilea son, who lives in Spain, works in a factory.
 - 2 My sister wants to be a musician. She plays the violin.
 - 3 I'd like to visit Buckingham Palace. The Queen lives there.
 - 4 Heft my new phone on the bus. I bought it last week.
 - 5 Martin speaks fluent Polish. His mum comes from Warsaw.
 - 6 Last month, I visited Jamaica. My grandfather was born there.
 - 7. My uncle earns a lot of money. He works for a bank,
 - 8 The Ferrari 550 can go at 320 km/h, It has a 5.5 litre engine.
 - 9 Jake 's going to study maths at university. His sister is in my class."
- 6 Make a list of five famous people. Write a simple sentence about each person.

Nigel Kennedy has a house in Poland. Angelina John ...

7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Take turns to be A and B, using your sentences from exercise 6. Student A; Read a sentence to Student B. Student B: Try to expand the sentence with extra information about the famous person.

Nigel Kennedy has a house in Poland.

Nigel Kennedy, who is a famous violinist, has a house in Poland.



1 Read the puzzle. What is the answer?

A man and his son are in a serious car accident. The man dies and the son is taken to hospital. When he gets there, the surgeon sees the boy and says: 'I can't operate on this boy. He's my son!' How can this be?

- Why do many people find it difficult to answer this puzzle?
- Look at the photos. What jobs are the man and woman doing? Choose from the jobs in the box.

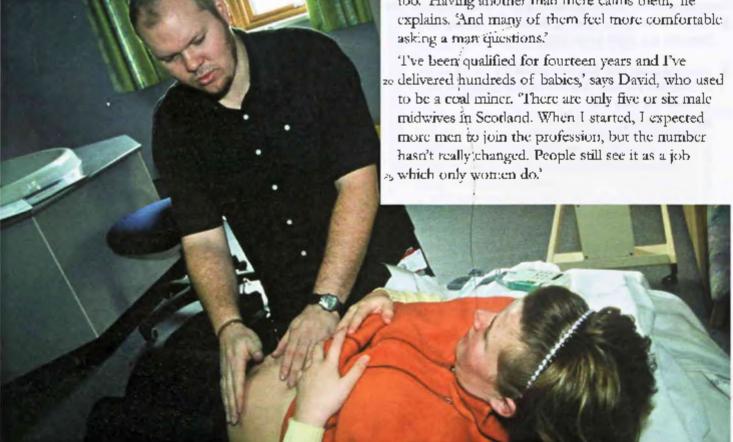
tabourer midwife mechanic nurse plumber surgeon

4 Read the texts quickly. Check your answers to exercise 3. How do you think people react when they find out about these people's jobs?

Work?

In many ways, David Cunningham is a stereotypical Scottish man. In his free time, he plays golf, goes to football matches, and meets his friends in the local pub, all the things you'd expect a young, active man

- 5 to do. And like many men, he isn't very good at housework. He's untidy, hardly ever hoovers and he's never cooked a meal in his life. However, one thing about him does not fit this stereotype: his job. David Cunningham is a midwife.
- Although some women are surprised when they that their midwife is a man, David has a good reputation in the part of Scotland where he works. In his opinion, it's because of the way he his duties. Treally care about the women that I
- is "to" he says. He the husbands too. 'Having another man there calms them,' he asking a man questions."



A man's world?

Base 34 is a new garage in Montpellier, in the south of France. Customers who take their cars there for repairs may be surprised to find that all the employees are women.

- When Herve Malige advertised for women who wanted to become mechanics, he received 120 applications. After tests and interviews, he chose fifteen. They included a nurse, a secretary, a beauty therapist and two flight attendants. They all wanted a chance to work in this traditionally male environment. I think a lot of people instinctively trust women more. And female customers might feel more comfortable with somebody who doesn't treat them as if they don't understand anything!'
- Although most car mechanics are still men, the situation is gradually changing. Men are starting to kave the profession, and women are joining it. Why? In a word, technology. In the past, being a mechanic was a physically tough and dirty job. Now, cars are much more complicated than they used to be. You need patience and intelligence to work out what the problem is, not strength. Many people believe that this makes the job more suitable for women than for men.

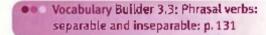


5 Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- David Cunningham does not have the same hobbles as most other men in Scotland.
- Most women that David has worked with think that he is good at his job.
- 3 David gets on well with the women but not with their husbands.
- 4 David is not very experienced in his work.
- 5 There are not many male midwives in Scotland, but the number is increasing.
- 6 What is surprising about Base 34 is that no men work there.
- 7 Fifteen women applied to work at the garage.
- 8 The women had different jobs before working at the garage, but wanted a change.
- The job of mechanic is changing because cars are setting simpler.
- 10 Many people think that there will be more female car mechanics in the future.

6 Find the phrasal verbs (1-5) in the texts. Match them with the definitions (a-e).

- 1 find out a deduce 2 damy out b care for
- 3 look after c do
- 4 get on well/badly with dilearn, discover 5 work out e have a good/bad relationship with



7 Look at the jobs in the box. Decide which jobs involve:

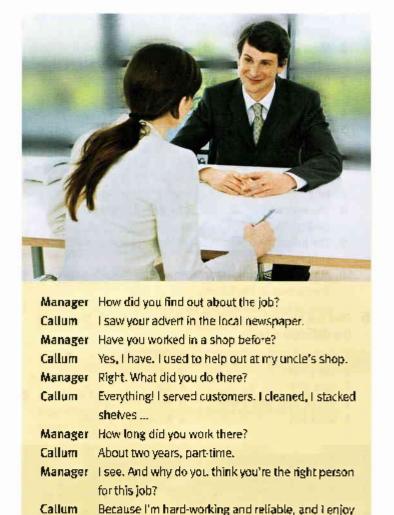
- a helping or looking after people.
- b working with small children or babies.
- c working with heavy machinery.
- d getting dirty.

Jobs aircraft pilot astronaut beauty therapist builder coal miner flight attendant kindergarten teacher long driver nurse nanny secretary

8 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- 1 Would you expect a man or woman to do the jobs in exercise 7?
- 2 Do you think men and women are better at different jobs, or equally good at all jobs? Give reasons.
- 3 Would you mind doing a job that is traditionally carried out by people of the opposite sex? Why?/Why not?

A job interview



1.19 Read and listen to the dialogue. Then read the three job advertisements below. Which job did Callum apply for?

Manager Well, thanks for coming in, Callum, We'll be in touch

before the end of the week.

® RECEPTIONIST

required for sports club near the city centre.
We are looking for a reliable person who can work to hours a week (2 hours every evening, Monday to Friday).
Computer skills essential.

Waiter / Waitress

dealing with the public. I'm also good at working

A busy café in the town centre needs a confident waiter or waitress to join our friendly, young team. Must have experience. £6.30 / hour plus tips

Electrical store requires a part-time shap assistant for weekends only. Must enjoy dealing with customers.

£5.50 on hour

2 Find 1-3 below in the dialogue in exercise 1.

- 1 a phrase which means 'to put things on the shelves in a shop'.
- 2 an adjective which means '(somebody) that you can trust'.
- 3 a phrase which means 'to contact by phone or letter'.
- 3 PRONUNCIATION Listen and repeat the five questions. Copy the intonation. In which question does the voice go up at the end? What is the difference between this question and the others?
- 4 \int 1.21 Match the definitions with the four jobs in the box. Then listen to the interview for a summer job. Which of the four jobs is it?

fruit picker gardener life guard market researcher

- a A person who interviews ordinary members of the public to get information for companies.
- b A person who takes fruit from trees or plants when it is ready.
- A person who looks after plants and flowers.

a What kinds of things do you do?

- d. A person who watches to make sure swimmers are safe.
- 5 1.21 Listen again. Number the questions in the order that you hear them. How many of the answers can you remember?

•	Are you in good physical health?	
3	When can you start work?	
1	Do you live locally?	
9	Have you got any experience of this type of work?	
	Why do you want this joh?	[]

6 1.22 PRONUNCIATION Read the speaking tip. Then listen and repeat the expressions. Copy the intonation.

Speaking tip

When someone responds to your question or to a statement you've made, show that you've listened to them, and understood what they said. Use these phrases.

Really? That's great! Right. I see. That's interesting.

OK.

- 7 Work in pairs. Plan an interview for one of the other Jobs in exercises 1 or 4. Use questions from this page or Invent your own. Include some phrases from the speaking tip.
- 8 Write your dialogue out. Then practise reading it in pairs.
- 9 SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class. The class votes on whether the applicant gets the job!

in a team.



- Read the letter quickly. Answer the questions.
 - 1 What job is Sandra applying for?
 - 2 Where did she work last summer?
 - 3 When can she start work?

The Manager	13 Birch Aven
Lenny's Restaurant	Luton
Green Lane	LU13 7 B U
Luton LU17 9HY	19 June 2007

Dear Sir or Madam.

- I am writing to apply for the post of kitcher, helper at Lenny's Restaurant which was advertised in last Saturday's newspaper.
- I have considerable experience of working in catering. Last summer, I worked for six weeks as a waitress in my local café.
 My responsibilities there included taking orders and serving customers as well as cleaning the kitchen and washing up.
- I consider myself to be reliable, hard-working and enthusiastic.
 If necessary, I can supply references from the café owner and also from a teacher at my school.
- I would be very grateful for the opportunity to visit the restaurant and discuss my application with you in person. I am available for interview any day after school or on Saturdays. If my application is successful, I will be available to start work on 25 July, immediately after my exams.

i am enclosing my CV.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Tours faithfully,

Sandra Blunt

Sendra Blunt

🎴 🔚 which paragraph (1, 2, 3	or 4) does Sandra mention:
------------------------------	----------------------------

3	references that she can send?	
b	the job she is applying for?	
E	when she can start work?	
ď,	where she saw the job advert?	L.
8	her personal qualities?	
1	her experience of working in catering?	

Writing tip

Avoid using informal expressions in formal letters.

Find formal expressions that have the same meaning.

- Find more formal ways of saying the underlined phrases in Sandra's letter.
 - 1 I am writing to ask you for the job of kitchen helper.
 - 2 I've worked a lot in catering.
 - 3 The things I had to do thete included taking orders.
 - 4 Ithink that I am reliable, hard-working and enthusiastic.
 - 5 I can give you references.
 - 6 I would really like to visit the restaurant ...
 - 7 ..., and talk about my application face to face.
 - 8 I can start work on 25 July.
 - 9 I'm sending my CV.
- 4 Read the job advert. Think about what qualities and experience you might need for the job. Make notes.

Hotel Receptionist

We need an intelligent, friendly, confident person to work at our hotel in Oxford from 15 July to 31 August. Working hours are from 10 a.m. to 6 p.m. Your duties will include greeting guests, checking them in and out, answering the phone and taking bookings.

Please apply in writing to: Queen Victoria Hotel 84–88 Beacham Rd Oxford 0X4 7UH

Write a formal letter of 120–150 words applying for the Job. Follow the writing plan below.

Paragraph 1

 Mention the job you are applying for and where you saw the advert.

Paragraph 2

 Talk about why you are right for the job. Mention personal interests, and relevant experience and responsibilities.

Paragraph 3

List your personal qualities and offer to send references.

Paragraph 4

- Say you would like to come for an interview and when you are available.
- · Say when you could start work.

Get ready for your EXAM 3

- 1 Get ready to LISTEN Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.
 - 1 How good is your memory?
 - 2 Do you find it easy to remember things?
 - 3 Can you remember what happened in your last English lesson? Do you and your partner remember the same things?
- 2 Do the Listening exam task.

LISTENING exam task

Listen to a report of an experiment. Choose the correct answers: A, B or C.

- 1 During the research, some of the participants
 - A made an advertisement with Bugs Burny.
 - B drew pictures of Bugs Bunny.
 - C did not see Bugs Bunny at all.
- 2 All the participants
 - A had visited Disneyland before.
 - B said they wanted to visit Disneyland.
 - C told stories of meeting Bugs Bunny.
- 3 Bugs Bunny
 - A sometimes visits Disneyland.
 - B can be found at Warner Brothers Six Flags theme park.
 - C does not appear at any theme park.
- 4 The point of the experiment was
 - At to show how easily a false memory can be created.
 - B to show how false memories can cause serious problems.
 - C to explain why some people are more likely than others to have false memories.
- To create a false memory.
 - A we have to talk about it.
 - B we must admit it could have happened.
 - C we must look at some pictures.
- 6 According to the text, nostalgic advertisements.
 - A refer to unhappy memories.
 - B help you improve your memory.
 - C change the way we remember things.
- 3 How reliable do you think our memories are? Can you think of any examples when people added made-up details to their stories?

4 Do the Use of English exam task.

USE OF ENGLISH exam task

Complete the text with an appropriate word in each gap.

Jobs for lazy people

If you look through the job pages of any newspaper, you find the same adjectives appearing in advert after advert: motivated, ambitious, hard-working, energetic, dynamic ... These are the qualities that you need for all jobs, '____ they? Well, perhaps '____ quite all. A few jobs exist which might be suitable for somebody '____ is less hard-working — even lazy!

Some furniture companies employ people *______
job is to test their new sofas and armchairs. *
example, the La-z-Boy Company, *_____ makes
reclining chairs, has several full-time furniture testers.
All they have to 7_____ is sit in the chairs for long
periods of time and then say *_____ comfortable they
are. It's one of the few workplaces *_____ it is OK to
fall asleep on the job!

If you are looking for peace and quiet, as well as a job which involves doing nothing "______ long periods, then perhaps you should consider becoming a house sitter. These people are paid just to occupy somebody's home while they are away on holiday or on business. Of course, you have to deal with any problems that arise, but if you are lucky, there won't be any.

5 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Work in pairs. Imagine that you left school ten years ago and that you are now organizing a reunion for members of your class. Agree on:

- where you should hold the rounion (restaurant? school hall? other venue?)
- what the reunion should involve (food? entertainment? speeches?)
- how the reunion will be paid for
- · whether you should invite any teachers as well.

Get ready for your EXAM 4

- Work in pairs. Tell your partner about your dream job. Where would or wouldn't you like to work? What would or wouldn't you like to do at work? Give reasons. Use the vocabulary from page 24 to help you.
- 2 Do the Reading exam task,

READING exam task

Read the text. Decide if the statements are true or false. For each statement, write the letter of the paragraph where you find evidence for your decision.

A NEW DREAM JOB?

- A Mr Lim, 24, is an absolute pro. What used to be his hobby is now a profession earning him about \$500,000 only last year. Over the next couple of years he will make much more.
- B He lives in a small two-bedroom apartment and, despite making a fortune, shares it with nine other people. There's a computer for everyone but not much room for anything more, except pizza boxes and bags filed with clothes. When, after a ten-hour training session, Mr Lim is ready to get some sleep, he simply rolls out a mattress. Like many of his profession, he prefers to sleep during the day and sit in front of his computer most of the night. His private life is non-existent and he hasn't been on a date for ages.
- C So what is Mr Lim's job? He is a professional computer-game player and spends his days wiping cut countless armies and annihilating alien species. This profession appeared on the job market only a few years ago, but it's a booming industry. In Korea, thousands of young people try out for the top teams. There are over 200 pros, the best ones joining professional leagues founded in the late 90s. The rules of selection are very strict, but anyone who thinks they've got what it takes can register through a national system and then climb from one level to the next to finally join the national delegation. These compete against each other in Singapore at the world championships.
- 9 Since the championships and online matches are watched by thousands, big money is made on tackets and advertising. Korea even has TV channels covering games round-the-clock and DVDs of famous face-offs proved more profitable than *The Matrix*. The champions are awarded fucrative cash prizes. Most of the players are about 20; however, there are also some in their 30s and 40s.
- E It is too early to predict how long a career like this can last. However, with its popularity on the rise, you might be set for life. So bring your favourite mouse, headphones and keyboard if you wish (computers are provided to prevent cheating) and let the games begin.

		True	False	Evidence
1	In Korea, you can watch games any time you want.			
2	Participants use only their own equipment.	_		
3	Mr Lim's apartment is not comfortably furnished.		\neg	
4	There are thousands of top players in Korea.		$\overline{}$	
5	The profession is open to everybody.			
6	Mr Lim does not have a proper bed.		_	
7	Computer-game playing may be a good job in the future.			
8	What Mr Lim does for a living used to be his favourite free-time activity.			

- 3 Get ready to SPEAK Look at the pictures in the exam task. Do you shop in markets? What kind of things do you buy there? Do you go to a library? Why? Why not?
- 4 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Compare and contrast the two photos. Answer the questions.





- What are the main differences between the two places of work; an open-air market and a public library?
- 2 What could be good or bad about working in a market or a library?
- 3 What kind of personal qualities do you need to do each job well?
- 4 Which job would you enjoy mare, in your opinion? Why?

Body and mind

THIS UNIT INCLUDES ...

Vocabulary = parts of the body = inside the body = legal terms = homophones = aches and pains = sympooms = illnesses

Grammar • past simple and present perfect contrast • present perfect continuous

Speaking • talking about diet and tifestyle • at the ductor's

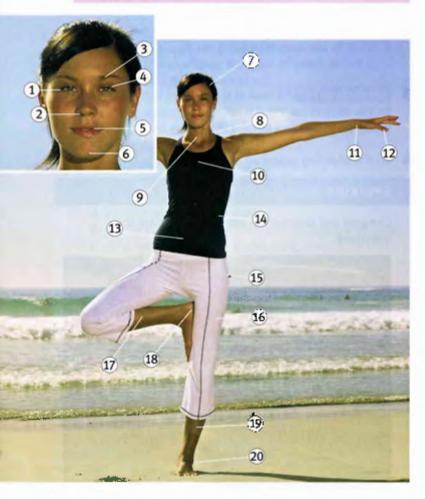
Writing • an informal letter: giving news

The human body

I can sulk above parts of the body and injuries.

1 Work in pairs. Match the parts of the body with the words in the box.

Parts of the body ankle calf chest thin eyebrow eyelash eyelid heel hip lip neck nostril scalp shin stomach thigh throat thumb wais: wrist



- 2 📦 1.24 Listen and check your answers.
 - Vocabulary Builder 4.1: Parts of the body: p. 131
- 3 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Student A: Describe a part of the body using one or more of the phrases below. Student B: Guess what A is describing. Swap roles.

It's part of your (face, leg, hand, etc.)
It's at the front/back of your ...
It's between your ... and your ...

- 4 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions with Have you ever about these injuries. If the answer is 'yes', ask another question using the word in brackets.
 - 1 (wisted your ankle? (How?)
- 4 had a stiff neck? (Why?)
- 2 broken a bone? (Which?)
- 5 pulled a muscle? (Which?)
- 3 dislocated a finger? (How?)
- 6 had aching feet? (Why?)

Have you ever	twisted	your	ankle?
---------------	---------	------	--------

Yes, I have.

How did you do it?

I was playing basketball and I lost my balance.

5 Complete the idioms with the words in the box. Then match them with the meanings (a-f) below.

arm chest foot hairs heels leg

- 1 to get something off your
- 2 to split _____
- 3 to twist samebody's —
- 4 to be head over ______ in love
- 5 to but your . _ _ _ in it
- 6 to bull somebody's ______
- a to be completely in love
- b to persuade somebody to do something
- c to upset or embarrass somebody accidentally
- d to tease somebody
- to talk about something that has been worrying you for a long time
- f to argue about unimportant details
- 6 1.25 Listen to six dialogues. Match each dialogue to an idlom in exercise 5.
 - The man is tailing the woman that he's read over neets in love.
- 7 Work in pairs. Write two short dialogues to illustrate the meaning of two idioms from exercise 5.
- SPEAKING Act out your dialogues to the class. Can they guess what the idiom is?

I think Sally is twisting Jake's arm.

Vocabulary Builder 4.2: Inside the body: p. 132

Past simple and present perfect contrast

I tak emiserny use bupiet simple and inspect purpose simple.

- What is the man in the photo doing? Read the text and answer the questions.
 - 1 in which country did free running start?
 - In which film did Sebastion Foucan appear in 2005?



Sebastien Foucan has taken part in free running since he was 15. The sport began in France in the 1980s. Free runners have to run, climb or jump over obstacles as gracefully as they can. The obstacles could be fences, cars, walls – even buildings. Sebastien once said, 'Free running has always existed, free running has always been there, the thing is that no one gave it a name.'

Sebastien has appeared on TV a number of times, but his big treak came in 2006 when he appeared in the James Bond film. Casina Royale. Since then, free running has become very popular among extreme sports enthusiasts. It can be quite tangerous although Sebastien has never had a serious accident. Sebastien has jumped across the rooftops of Parls and London. And he's just announced his latest challenge: the buildings and monuments of New York!

- Underline all the past simple and present perfect verbs in the text. Read the Learn this! box and match them with the uses.
 - 1 We use the past simple to talk about completed events in the past (often with words that refer to a finished time: yesterday, two years ago). I went to London lost weekend.
 - 2 We use the present perfect
 - a to say how long a current situation has existed (often with for and since).
 Peter has lived in that house for five years.
 - **b** to talk about an experience in the past. The exact time of the experience is not important. "Have you ever been to Paris?" "No, I haven't."
 - to talk about events that are connected with the present (for example, news and recent events). We sometimes use already, just and yet. 'Is fim here?' 'No, he's just gone.'

3	1.26 Complete the interview. Use the past simple or
	present perfect form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and
	check

Suzie Bowman is a freediver. Freedivers try to dive as deep as possible into the sea on a single lungful of air, without breathing apparatus.

Interviewer When '_____ you _____ (start) freediving?

Suzie | 1' _____ (make) my first freedive in zoon.

Interviewer | 1 ow 3 ______ you _____ (discover) that you had a falent for freediving?

Well, 1' _____ (be) a good swimmer since a very young age. Later, 1' _____ (find) that I could hold my breath for a long time under water.

Suzie 1⁷______ (break) three so far. But I hope to break more.

Interviewer 3 ______ you _____ (have) any scary moments?

Suzie No, not reatly. Some sharks 7 ______ (swim) past me on one occasion, but they ¹⁰ _____ (not be) interested in

Interviewer How many world records 6_______ you ______

Find the time expressions in the box in the dialogue in exercise 3. Then add them to the chart below.

past simple
yesterday
last week
a year ago
1 ____
2 ___
3 ___

SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about what you have done this week. Use the phrases in the box and your own ideas. Notice which tenses are used to ask the two questions in the example.

go to the cinema? play computer games? eat out? read any good books? do any homework? do any sport?

Have you been to the o	inema this week?
What did you s	Yes, I have.
~	We saw Casino Royale.

Grammar Builder 4.1: Past simple and present perfect: p. 113

Fast food addicts



In 2002, several obese teenagers in the USA sued McDonald's, claiming that the company was responsible for making them fat. ¹ They claimed that the company had not warned them about the health problems that can result from eating too much salty, high-fat food and drinking too many sugary drinks: diabetes, high blood pressure and obesity. The mother of one of the children, who at the age of 15 weighed more than 180 kilograms, said in her statement: 'I always believed McDonald's was healthy for my son.'

- McDonald's rejected the claim that they were responsible for these teenagers' health problems. ² The understanding of what hamburgers and French fries do has been with us for a long, long time,' he added. The judge agreed, and dismissed the case, saying: 'it is not the place of the law to protect people against their own excesses.' In other words, if people choose to eat a lot of unhealthy food, they can't blame the company that sold it to them.
- In 2005, the US House of Representatives passed a bill which became known as the 'Cheeseburger Bill'. It made it much harder for obese people to take legal action against the food industry. ⁴ There is some scientific evidence to suggest that fast food is addictive, and harmful too. So is selling fast food the same, in a way, as drug-dealing?
 - Describe the food in the photo. Which items contain a lot of:
 - 1 fat?
- 3 vitamins?
- 5 protein?

- 2 sugar?
- 4 carbohydrate?
- 6 salt?
- Read the text, ignoring the gaps. Explain in your own words why some teenagers in the USA sued McDonald's.

- Match the sentences (a-e) with the gaps (1-4) in the text.
 There is one sentence that you do not need.
 - a 'People don't go to sleep thin and wake up obese,' said McDonald's lawyer, Brad Lerman.
 - However, the bill has not ended the arguments about responsibility.
 - They argued that McDonald's deliberately misled them into thinking that their cheeseburgers and other products were healthy and nutrit ous food.
 - d These new burgers were larger, and higher in fat, than the standard burgers.
 - Other similar lawsuits against fast food companies in the USA have also failed.
- 4 Do you think fast food companies are partly to blame for obesity? Justify your answer.
- 5 Complete the legal words and phrases from the text.
 - To ______ somebody means to take legal action against somebody.
 - A law L. L. is a legal case against somebody,
 - 3 To _____ a case is to reject it in court.
 - 4 To pass a _____ is to make a law.
- 6 1.27 Listen to three American teenagers talking about diet and lifestyle. Answer the questions for each person.
 - 1 How many hours of TV does he/she watch per day?
 - 2. How many times a week does he/she do exercise?
 - 3 Does he/she eat healthily?
- 7 🞧 1.27 Listen again. Are the sentences true or false?
 - Tony likes watching films.
 - 2 Tony walks, plays football and goes surfing.
 - 3 Tony never cats junk food.
 - 4 Karen coesn't watch TV if there aren't any good programmes on or she has to do a lot of homework.
 - 5 The only exercise Karen does is at school.
 - 6 Karen's mum heats up TV dinners for her.
 - 7 Chris watches TV before and after school.
 - 8 Chris usually plays basketball at the weekend.
 - 9 Chris's family sometimes have a takeaway meal in the evening.
- SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.
 Make a note of your partner's answers.
 - 1 Do you ever eat Junk food? What type? How often?
 - 2 In your opinion, do you have a healthy diet?
 - 3 How many hours a day do you spend watching TV?
 - 4 How often do you exercise? What exercise do you do?
 - 5 What could you do to make your lifestyle healthier?
- 9 SPEAKING Tell the class about your partner.

Chris spends four hours a day watching TV.

Present perfect continuous

Read the text quickly. What is unusual about Mark Bolton?

That do you think of his ideas?



Students at Medway Secondary School have been listening to a lot of Mozart and Bach recently. Teacher Mark Bolton takes a CD player into all his lessons and he plays

music white his students are working. But he isn't a music teacher – he teaches maths. Mark has been reaching at the school since 2002 but he's only been beying music in his lessons for the last two years. It helps my students to concentrate, he says. 'Their marks have improved a lot because they have been working much harder.' Mark has discovered that Mozart produces the best results, although any music has a positive effect. Two been playing rock music to the playing students, he says. And what do his students think? Julia Marsh, 15, is looking very relaxed when she comes out at the end of the lesson. That's because the been listening to James Blunt,' she says. If used to hate maths,' she adds, 'but now I love it!'

Look at the verbs in blue in the text. Complete the rule.

We form the present perfect continuous with have / and the ling form of the verb.

Present perfect continuous

We use the present perfect continuous to talk about

- 1 an action that began in the past and is still in progress. We often use for or since to say how long it has been in progress.
 - I've been learning English for six years.
- 2 an action that has recently stopped and which explains the present situation.
 I'm tired, I haven't been sleeping well.
- Read the Learn this! box. Then complete the questions and answers using the present perfect continuous and information from the text in exercise 1.

1	'What .	stu	dents at	Med	lway Se	condary	Schoo
		recently?"	'Mozart	and	Bach."		

- 2 'How long _____ at the school?' 'Since 2002.'
- 3 'How long _____ music in his tessons?' 'For the last two years.'
- 4 "Who _____ rock music to?" "His younger students."
- 5 'Why is Julia looking relaxed?' 'Because she ______ James Blunt.'

4 Complete the sentences with the present perfect continuous form of the verbs in the box. Then match the sentences with the questions (a-f).

	eat	not fe	eel	rain	paint	sit	wo	rk	
2		t	he c	_	•		5		_ very well. in the garde
ą	Wh	у аге у	σμι	hands	dirty?	d		ıy have ır hair:	you got paint i
b	Wh	y aren	't yo	u hun:	gry?	e	Wh	у аге у	ou late?
C	Wh	y is yo	ur h	air we	t?	F		y are y ctor's?	ou going to the

Look out!

Present perfect simple or present perfect continuous? We use the present perfect simple not the present perfect continuous.

- 1 if the action is finished and complete.

 Pre written a letter to my cousin. I'm going to post it now.
- 2 if we want to say how often an action has happened. She's broken her leg three times.
- 3 with state verbs (like, love, know, remember, etc.).
 I've known Joe for a year. ✓
 I've been knowing Joe for a year. X
- 5 Read the Look out! box. find two examples in the text in exercise 1 of the present perfect simple which describe actions that are finished and complete.
- 6 Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect simple or continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

1	I (learn) English for five years. I study after school.
2	You can have your book back now. I (read) it.
3	1 (know) Tom since May.
4	You look upset you (cry)?
5	How many times you (see) that film?
6	I (look) for my keys for ages, but I (not fine)
	them yet.
7	Mum (shop) all morning. She (p.iy) lots of
	Christmas presents.

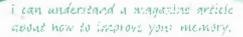
Grammar Builder 4.2: Present perfect simple and present perfect continuous; p. 113

8 He . ___ (do) his homework, but he ____ (not finish) yet.

- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Student A: Make a comment from the list (1-5). Student B: Give a reason, using the present perfect simple or continuous.
 - 1 You look tired.
- 4 You look fed up.
- You look cold.
- 5 You look irritated.
- Your clothes are wet and dirty.

You look tired.

I've been playing football.







Can you remember people's faces but not their names? Are you bad at remembering people's birthdays? How many things have you forgotten this week? According to Andi Bell, you needn't be forgetful ever again.

Andi Bell used to be unemployed. Now he is a memory grandmaster who has won the world memory championships three times. He has been training his memory for around fifteen years, ever since he read an article about the amazing memory man, Dominic O'Brien. In 2002, he beat his hero O'Brien at the World Memory Championships for the first time.

Andi has broken many memory records and is currently the speed memory champion. He has correctly memorised the order of a pack of cards in just 31.16 seconds. He can also remember the order of over 1,000 cards in one hour. So how does he do it?

Andi's technique is an unusual but simple one. Journalist Lara Barton met him and wrote an account of his technique.

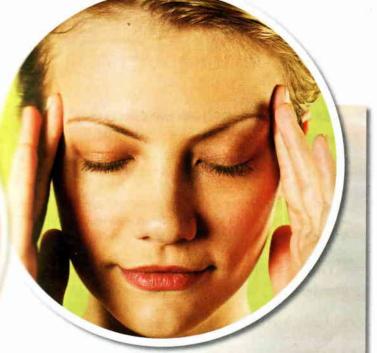
Today, Andi Bell is going to teach me how to improve my memory. In less than one hour, I will have a working memory of the past 1,000 years in history. 'Right,' says Andi, 'think of ten rooms in a building you know very well.' I think of the house I grew up in. He tells me we'te going to call each room a different century. 'What is your first room?' he asks.

'It's my bedroom, Andi.'

Your bedroom is the 1000s,' he says. 'Imagine the Battle of Hastings in the middle of the room.' Then just before the door I have to imagine a water clock to remind me of Su-Sung's invention in China. I've never seen a water clock, so I imagine something like a sundial in water. By the end of the tour, I've put Marco Polo at the bottom of the stairs, Queen Victoria in the kitchen cupboard, and the Mona Lisa in the dining room. Whatever will my mother say?

The basic idea is that you imagine events, and put them at a particular point in the room, depending upon when they happened during the century. For example, events at the start of a century go near the door.

Essentially, the historical events become like furniture – you learn to associate them with a particular room and place. To me, Mozart now sits, like a table, in the middle of my kitchen, and I have to walk around him to get to Beethoven!



Andi says that everybody can benefit from his archaiques. All you have to do is think of the things want to remember and put them in familiar places in your mind. 'You can apply it to anything, can apply it to learning,' he says. So, have you have been paying attention? You have no excuse for passing your exams now.

Read the text quickly, Which sentence is false?

- Andi Bell can remember everything that happened in his life.
- Andi Bell can memorise things very quickly.
- 3 Andi Bell thinks that everyone can improve their memory.

Choose the best answers.

- 1 Andi Bell
 - a has always had a fantastic memory.
 - **b** was unemployed before he started to train his memory.
 - has been a memory grandmaster for fifteen years.
- Andi started training his memory because
 - a he read an article about Dominic O'Brien.
 - b he wanted to meet his hero, Dominic O'Brien,
 - c he wanted to win the World Memory Championships.
- 3 Andi leaches Lara Barton to memorise
 - a ten rooms in a building she knows,
 - b historical events from the past 1,000 years.
 - ten rooms in the house she grow up in.
- In order to memorise things, Lara has to
 - a visualise them next to the door.
 - b pretend they are famous composers.
 - c visualise them as furniture in a room.
- 5 Andi says his technique
 - a is best used for studying.
 - b is better for some people than others.
 - c is good for learning anything you need to remember.

3	Complete the sentences with the highlighted verbs in the
	text. Use the correct tense and form.

1	Don't to lock the door before you go to bed.
2	Our teacher told us to this poem by tomorrow.
3	I can't his name.
4	Can you me to phone Phillip?
5	Close your eyes and that you are on the beach
6	I the smell of sun cream with holidays.

LEARN

Homophones

A homophone has the same pronunciation as another word, but a different spelling and meaning, for example: their and there, or sea and see.

- 4 Read the Learn this! box. Find homophones of these words in the first two paragraphs of the text.
 - 1 there 3 bee 5 four 2 weak 4 ore 6 red
- 5 PRONUNCIATION Say these words aloud. Which two or three words in each group are homophones?

1	a	word	ь	ware	ť	war
2	a	where	b	wear	¢	ware
3	а	two	b	too	¢	to
4	a	here	b	hear	Ċ	hare
5	a	through	b	thraw	C	threw
6	a	know	b	now	¢	по
7	а	howl	ь	whole	Ç	hole
8	а	write	b	r'ght	¢	rite
9	a	there	b	they're	C	the'r
10	а	aren¹t	ь	ant	C	aunt

- 6 1.28 Listen and check your answers to exercise 5.
- 7 Find four parts of a house in the text. Then work in pairs and brainstorm more parts of a house. How many can you think of?
- 8 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Play a memory game.
 - Think of eight words for your partner to remember.
 Write them down and give them to your partner.
 - Look at the eight words that your partner wrote for you. Imagine you are walking round your house or flat.
 Place each word in a different place on your route.
 - Cover the words and start at the beginning of the route. See if you can 'find' all of the words in the places you put them,
 - If it was too easy, try it with ten or twelve words.

Symptoms

feel terrible.

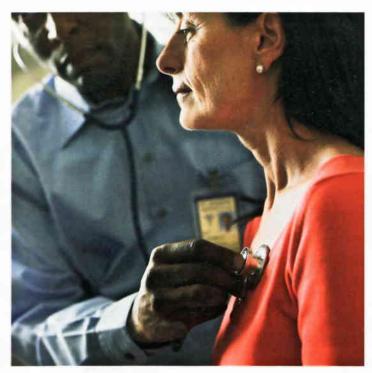
blocked.

b a chest infection c food poisoning d hay fever e la twisted ankle f concussion

box. Then listen and check.

Illnesses a flu

EVERYDAY ENGLISH At the doctor's



1.29 Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box. Then listen and check.

listen to your chest keep warm and get plenty of rest. I've got a temperature and a bad cough for about a week three times a day after meals

Patient	Good morning, Doctor.
Doctor	Good morning. What can I do for you?
Patient	Well, I haven't been feeling very well recently.
Doctor	How long has this been going on?
Patient	2
Doctor	Can I 3?
Patient	Of course.
Doctor	I think you've got an infection. I'll prescribe some
	antibiotics.
Patient	Will I get better soon?
Doctor	Take the tablets 4
	and it should clear up in a few days.
Patient	OK. Thank you.
Doctor	You should ', If you're
	not feeling better in a week from now, come and see
	me again.
Patient	Thank you, Doctor. Goodbye.
Dactor	Goodbyro

Match the symptoms (1-6) with the illnesses (a-f).

I banged my head and I feel dizzy and confused. 4 My ankle is swollen and I can't really walk on it. 5 Pive got a nasty cough, a temperature and my nose is

6 I've got stomach ache and I feel sick.

1 I can't stop sneezing and my eyes are watering all the time. I feel shivery, I've got a headache and I'm aching all over. I

 You should. ____ is much as possible, and _____ in bed. 2 I don't think you should go to ______. You need _____ rest. 3 If you don't _ _ better in three or four days, come back and _____ me again. 4. You must . _____ your foot for a couple of days. Try not to

5 Ptl _____ some painkit.ers. You can ____ ... them every four

1.30 Listen. Which illnesses do the three patients have?

1.31 Complete the doctor's advice. Use the words in the

avoid diarrhoea drink feel ice liquid plenty of

prescribe rest see stay take walk work

6 You can also put ______ on it to keep it cool.

7 Drink lots of _ .. _ .

hours.

8 When the _____ stops, you can eat a little dry bread - but ______. milk and cheese,

5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue between a patient and a doctor. Use the words and phrases in exercises 1, 2 and 4,

Greet each other.

- · Doctor: ask what the problem is.
- Patient: explain your symptoms.
- Doctor: say what you think the illness is.
- Patient: ask for the doctor's advice.
- · Doctor: give your advice.
- Patient: thank the doctor.
- Say goodbye to each other.
- SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class,

t can virite a letter giving sexie.

Sead the letters quickly. What illness or injury do Emily and Latie each have?

That Rob

• are you? What have you no to? Sorry I haven't men to you for ages, but I've really busy recently with effect the like! I've also been arsing for the Christmas which starts next week.

what! I'm in hospital! Tank, I'm not seriously

family are all fine. Mum's been working really hard. She seem it get home till late. Dad's bought a new car — well, I new, but actually it's about ten years old. Chris has got a computer and spends most of the time playing computer

Tats all for now. I'd better go.

Loads of love

Emily

Dear Graham

Tranks for your letter. I got it last week and it really made me laugh! I'm off school today with a temperature and an upset stomach. I've been sick three times, but I'm feeling a bit better now.

Enough of all that. I bumped into Sally and Dave last weekend. Guess what! They've been going out together since the Halloween party in October. They seem really seen on each other. Susie is fine too. She sends her love. I think she still fancies you!) We all miss you!

Egoess you've started at your new school in London naw. is it? Have you made loads of new friends? Don't itrget about your old ones!!! So many questions! Do write upon and send me your news.

C45

Julie

S. Why don't we get together in London one weekend?
= con easily get the train down.

2	Answer the	questions.
		decorpous.

- 1 What has Emily been doing at school?
- 2 Why doesn't Emily's mum get home until late?
- 3 What have her dad and her brother bought?
- 4 What have Dave and Sally been doing?
- 5 What does Susie think of Graham, in Julie's opinion?
- 6 Where does Graham go to school now?
- Write a next to the phrases for beginning a letter and b next to the phrases for signalling the end of a letter.

Pł	arases for informal letters	
1	Sorry I haven't written for ages.	
2	That's all my news for now.	
3	It was great to hear from you.	
4	Must dash Mum's calling me for dinner.	
5	I'd better finish here as I'm running out of space.	
6	Thanks for your letter.	
7	I'd better stop here. It's getting late.	
8	That's all for now. I'd better go now.	
9	How are you?	f
		_

- Find the phrases (1-7) in the letters. Then match the phrases with the functions (a-g).
 - 1 Enough of all that.
- 5 What have you been up to?
- 2 Why don't we ... ?
- 6 Do + verb (e.g. Do write)
- 3 Guess what!
- 7 She sends her love.
- 4 Loads of love
- a introducing surprising news
- b making a suggestion
- cliasking for news of the other person
- d ending the letter
- e changing the subject
- f making a strong request
- g sonding greetings from someone else
- Make notes for an informal letter to a friend who has moved away from your town. Follow the plan below.
 - Paragraph 1: Start with an appropriate phrase. Applogise for not writing sooner.
 - Paragraph 2: Give news about yourself.
 - Paragraph 3: Give news about your friends and/or family.
 - Paragraph 4: Ask questions about your friend.

Writing tip

In informat letters, we usually use everyday language. We normally use short forms instead of long forms.

Read the writing tip. Then write a letter of 120–150 words using your notes from exercise 5. Use phrases from exercises 3 and 4.

LANGUAGE REVIEW 3-4

Vocabulary

- Complete the missing words.
 - 1 My w __k _ _ h _ _ _ are from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.
 - 2 Harvey has a p _ _ _ t _ _ job in the morning so that he can study in the afternoon.
 - 3 Jasmine e _ _ _ £10 an hour as a gardener.
 - 4 Nathan is a l _ b _ _r _ on a building site.
 - There are four people in our advertising t _ _m.
 - 6 My job is hard work out it's c__l__g___.

Mark

2 Match a word in the box with a part of the body.

	heel	lip	nostrit	scalp	thigh	thumb	
2	foot leg mout	h			4 n 5 h 6 h	ead	
N	lark	1	6				

Grammar

- 3 Complete the defining relative clauses with who, whose, where or which.
 - A carpenter is a person _____ makes wooden furniture.
 - A surgery is a place _____ a doctor sees their patients.
 - 3 Labourers are people _____ do manual work.
 - 4 Nannies are people _____ job requires a love of children.
 - 5 Shift work is work _____ hasn't got a fixed timetable.
 - 6 A salary is money _____ is paid monthly directly into your bank account.

Mark

/6

- 4 Combine the two sentences. Use a non-defining relative. clause.
 - Lily is studying to be a doctor. Her mother is a nurse. Lily, whose mother is a ruses, in studying to be a doctor.
 - 2 My brother works as a lecturer. He also does research into tropical diseases.

- My brother_ My studio is very cheap. I spend most of my time there.
- My studio ... My computer is a laptop. I take it with me everywhere.
- My computer _ 5 My boss spends very :ittle time in the office. His secretary.
 - is his wife. My boss _
- 6 My office is never warm enough. It has a marvellous view of the river.

My office.

Mark

/5 |

- 5 Complete the sentences with the present perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.
 - 1 I'm crying because I_____ _ (watch) a sad film. 2 How long _____ (you / live) in this district?
 - (not listen) to the teacher so he 3 Rvan doesn't know what the homework is.
 - 4 You look awful, ______ (sleep) properly?
 - ___ (see) Tyler, but nobody knew 5 Hannah __ anything about it.

Mark

Mark

/5

Everyday English

- 6 Put the lines (a-e) in the correct order to complete the dialogue.
 - a Right. What did you do there?
 - b Because 'm hard-working and reliable.
 - I served drinks, and looked after the till.
 - d. I see. And why do you think you're the right person for this
 - Yos, I have, I used to help my aunt in her café.

Manager	have you worked in a restaurant before?
Boy	
Manager	
Boy	
Manager	
Boy	
Manager	OK, Dylan, Thanks for coming. We'll be in touch
	soon.

7 Complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

better	dizzy flu temperature tablets
Dactor	Good morning. What can I so for you?
Patient	Good morning. I've got a headache and I feel
Doctor	How long has this been going on?
Patient	For about a week.
Doctor	Can I just take your ? ?
Patient	Of course.
Doctor	I think you've got ³
Patient	Oh. Will I get ⁴ soon?
Doctor	Take these ⁵ and it should clear up soon.
Mark	/5
Total	/38

Exam Challenge Workbook pages 94-97

SKILLS ROUND-UP 1-4

Listening

1 State Look at the advertisement. Then listen and say which of the three jobs Marek is applying for.

SPORTECH

Health and fitness club

We are currently looking for people to fill these vacancies:

- · receptionia:
- cleaner
- assistant chaf

No experience required

2	1322 Listen again. Number the questions in the order
	that you hear them.

- a Have you ever worked in a health and fitness club before?
- b What's your address?
- c Where are you from?
- d Do you think you're good at dealing with people?

SPORTECH Health and fitness club

e Do you do much exercise?

Reading

3 Read the text quickly. What kind of text is it?

- a magazine article
- c a newspaper report
- b a publicity leaflet
- d a narrative
- 4 Choose the best answers.
 - 1 The health club has facilities for swimming, aerobics and
 - a tennis.
- b martial arts.
- c weight training.
- d yoga.
- 2 If you suffer from back pain, it's a good idea to
- a lift heavy weights in the gym.
- b avoid lifting any weights.
- cigo swimming regularly.
- d lift light weights in the gym.
- 3 The saton can help prepare you for a holiday by helping you to get
 - a brown.
- b thin.
- c stronger,
- d fitter.
- 4 In the café, 9 p.m. is too late to
 - a watch television.
 - biread a newspaper.
 - c order snacks.
 - d buy special meals for children.
- 5 You don't need to pay for
 - a your coffee when you use the internet in the café.
 - b using the computers in the café if you're a member.
 - c getting online wirelessly in the café.
 - d any of the Internet facilities in the club.

Get fit

Inatever form of exercise you prefer, we have the facilities: a full-equipped gym, two aerobics studios and a swimming pool. Our frained advisors not only give advice about general fitness, but also design exercise programs for specific needs. Did you know, for example, that gentle exercise with weights is one of the best ways to deal with back pain, neck pain and pint problems?

Unwind

Our salon provides a variety of health and beauty treatments, from hearculs to pedicures. Prepare for your beach holiday by booking his or more sunded sessions and receive a 10% discount. Or why not try a full body massage for the ultimate in relaxation?

Refresh

Our café is open from 7 a.m. until 11 p.m. Order from our wide range of drinks, meals and snacks, and then relax with friends or watch TV. There is a so a quiet area, if you prefer to read the tenspaper or just meditate! Children's meals are also available nations 6 p.m.

Stay connected

Fork out, then log on! Take advantage of two computer terminals and the broadband Internet connection in our cafe. They are free for all members. The cafe also offers, for a small tee, wiveless Internet fartifies for people who prefer to stay connected via the rown sector. Why not enjoy a coffee and a sandwich while you check true smalls?

Writing

- 5 Write a formal letter to the manager of Sportech applying for one of the jobs in the advertisement in exercise 1. Remember to say:
 - · which job you are applying for
 - what your work experience is (if you have any)
 - why you would be a good person for the job
 - When you can start work

Speaking

6 Work in pairs. Role-play an interview with your partner for the job that you applied for in exercise 5. Use questions from exercise 2 and your own ideas.

So, your name is ...

Yes, that's right.

And which job are you applying for?

The job as a ...



Read what three young people say about computers and how they use them. Who is the most similar to you?

Jenny: 'We've had broadband since January, and it's really changed the way we use our computer. We've bought a webcam, so we can video chat with our friends in the States. I also download a lot more music and videos from the Net because it's faster now, and I burn them onto CDs and DVDs.'

Rob: 'I use a laptop at home. We've got a wireless router in the hall, so it's easy to get online in any room in the house. I've got my own website with photos of myself, my family and my friends. I write a blog (when I remember) so that my friends know all my news. My website also includes lots of links to my other favourite websites.'

Belinda: 'We haven't got a computer at home, but there's an Internet café near my home. I go there two or three times a week and log onto my e-mail account. I also surf the Internet and visit some of my favourite websites. I occasionally download music. The computer that I use hasn't got a CD-writer, but it's easy to copy files onto a flash drive."

2 Complete the definitions using the words in red in exercise 1.

1	are connections between different web pages or
	different parts of a web page.
2	is a fast, permanent connection to the Internet.
3	A allows you to and surf the Internet
	without plugging any wires into your computer.
4	A allows you to send video pictures via the Interne
5	A is a small, portable computer.
6	A is a diary that you write on the Internet.
7	If your computer has a, you can
	information from your computer onto a CD.
8	The is another word for the Internet.
9	To is to communicate via the Internet with voice
	and video pictures.
10	To means to copy from the Internet onto your
	computer.
11	You usually a website by entering your username
	and password.
12	A is a very small, portable device for storing
	computer files.

Vocabulary • computing • noun prefixes • compound nouns (1)

verb + noun collocations • making, accepting and declining suggestions

Grammar • zero conditional • speculating and predicting: will, may, might, etc.

• first conditional • future perfect and future continuous • will, going to and present continuous • verbs followed by an infinitive • future time clauses

Speaking • talking about the future • discussing environmental issues

making plans

Writing • an essay: for and against

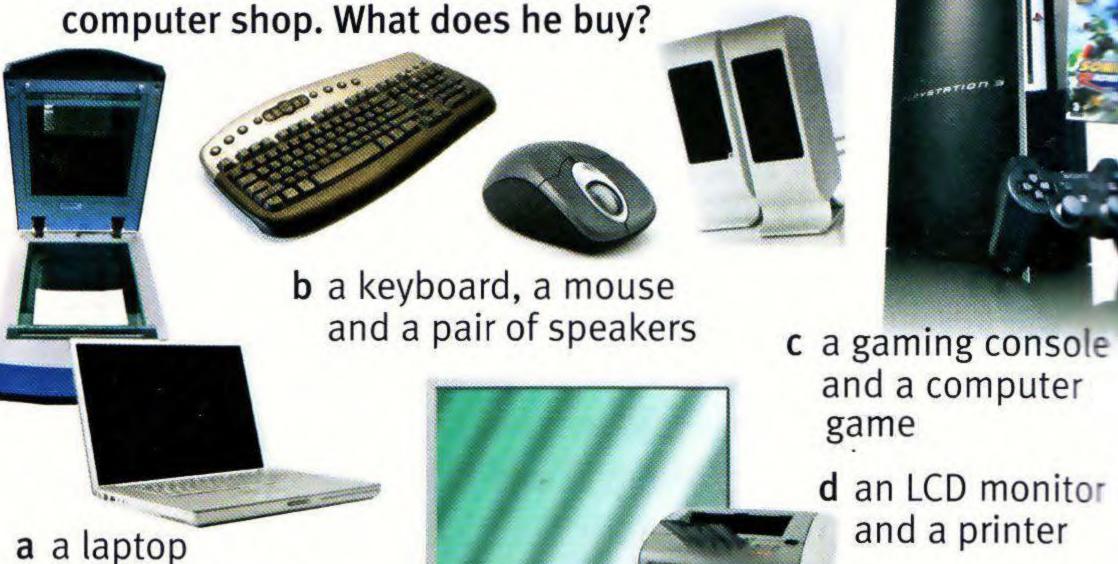
Match the two parts of the sentences.

- 1 If you haven't got broadband,
- 2 If you click on this link,
- 3 If you haven't got a DVD-writer,
- 4 If you type in your password,
- 5 If you want to know what I've been doing,
- 6 If you plug this flash drive into the USB port,
- a you can't burn DVDs.
- **b** you can copy the files onto your laptop.
- c you can log onto this website.

1.33 Listen to a customer in a

- **d** it takes a long time to download files from the Internet.
- e your browser will take you to the Wikipedia website.
- f you should read my blog.

Grammar Builder 5.1: Zero conditional: p. 114



and a printer

1.33 Listen again. Complete the descriptions with the numbers in the box and match them to the items in exercise 4.

2 8 20 50 512

and a scanner

- 1 It's got a ___ gigabyte hard drive.
- 2 There are ___ multimedia keys.
- 3 It has ___ buttons, so you can left-click or right-click.
- 4 It can hold ___ sheets of paper.
- 5 It's got ___ megabytes of RAM.

SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

- 1 How often do you use computer equipment?
- 2 What do you use it for?
- 3 How has the way you use a computer changed in the last five years
 - Vocabulary Builder 5.1: Noun prefixes: p. 132

I can speculate about the future and make predictions,

Read the text and look at the photo. What is this man's job?
Why is he good at it?



If you try to predict the future of technology, you'll probably get it harribly wrong — like the prediction made by T.J. Watson, the head of IBM, in 1943: "I think there may be a world market for five computers in total."

Soon, in rich countries, there will be more computers than people.

However, Kazuo Kashio, the president of Casia, is particularly good at predicting the future. 'I can tell immediately which gadgets will self well and which gadgets won't.'

what will be the best-selling gadgets ten years from now? Surprisingly, which believes that watches may be the luture - watches with different musions. For example, they could be mobile phones, MP3 players and musions as well. "It will be the ultimate mobile gadget that you can't have Judging by his success in the past, he might be right!

#Ead the Learn this! box. Find an example of these structures in the text: may, might, could, will, first conditional.

Speculating and predicting

0% 100% won't >> might/could >> may >> will probably >> will

- 1 To talk about possibility in the future, we can use may, might or could followed by a base form. Might and could suggest a weaker possibility than may. He may/might/could/ buy a computer.
- 2 We use may not or might not for the negative we do not use could not.
- 3 To make predictions, we can use will. When we are not certain, we use I think or probably.

It will probably rain tomorrow.

- Look at the numbers in the chart and the key below. Write sentences about Vince's future using will / won't, may, might and could.
 - avea lest nillo danve.
 - 1 = ves 2 = possibility 3 = weaker possibility 4 = no.

will you:	Vince	Your partner
1 learn to drive?	1	
2 get married?	2	
3 have children?	2	
have four or more children?	4	
5 move abroad?	3	
≤ stay fit?	1	

4 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask your partner the questions from exercise 3. Make a note of his or her answers by writing 1–4 in the chart.

Will you learn to drive?

Yes, I think so. / I may. / I might. / No, I don't think so.

First conditional

1 We often make predictions with the first conditional.

If you buy a laptop, you'll be able to work anywhere.

- 2 We can use may, might or could in the main clause.

 If you write a blog, you might be famous.
- 5 1.34 Read the Learn this! box above. Then listen to two young people making predictions about the future of the planet. Who is more optimistic: Martin or Bryony?
- 6 1.34 Listen again. Complete Martin and Bryony's predictions using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

become change destroy find have hit live program not reduce use

- If we don't reduce carbon emissions, the world's climate will change.
- 2 If petrol _____ very expensive, people ____ their cars less.
- 3 If we _____ robots to do a lot of menial jobs, everybody ____ more time for hobbies and relaxation.
- 4 If scientists _____ cures for all major diseases, people ____ much longer,
- 5 If a huge meteorite _____ the earth, it ____ everything.

Speaking tip

Use these expressions to say that you agree or disagree with a statement:

I think that's true. / I don't think that's true.

lagree / don't agree with (you / him / that opinion).

I believe / don't believe that's right.

- 7 SPEAKING Read the speaking tip. Say whether you agree or disagree with the predictions in exercise 6. Give reasons.
- SPEAKING Complete these predictions about the future with your own ideas. Then tell the class. Do they agree?
 - 1 If computers become more intelligent than humans, ...
 - 2 If everybody lives past the age of 100, ...
 - 3. If the world's climate becomes warmer, ...
 - 4 If computer games start to look and feel exactly the same as real life, ...

Grammar Builder 5,2; Speculating and predicting: p. 114

I can understand and react to an article about politics and the environment.

Look at the posters for a political party. What issues do you think this party campaigns for? Make a list of your ideas.



2 Read the text. Does it mention any of your ideas from exercise 1?

GOING GREEN

In Britain today, more 18–24-year-olds vote in TV shows like Pop Idol than in general elections. All political parties are trying to encourage more young people to get involved in politics. This means talking about the issues that are important to them.

The first political party to make the environment an important Issue was the Green Party. The party has existed in the UK for about 30 years. (For the first ten years, it was called the Ecology Party.) The Greens do not have any seats in the House of Commons because in general elections most people vote for the three main parties: Labour, the Conservatives and the Liberal Democrats. However, they have several MEPs (Members of the European Parliament) and many local councillors across Britain. They campaign on many issues, including:

- animal rights: they want to ban scientific experiments on animals and improve conditions for animals on farms
- transport: they want to reduce the amount of traffic and pollution by making buses and trains cheaper, and by encouraging people to walk and cycle more
- green energy: they want to invest in clean, renewable sources of energy – wind farms, wave and solar power
- food and farming: they are against GM (genetically modified) food and the use of chemicals in farming

Twenty years ago, politicians who weren't in the Green Party hardly ever talked about 'green' issues like recycling, renewable energy and climate change. But today, all political parties have 'green' policies. People are realising that the earth is in danger. If we don't change our way of life, the results will be disastrous for our planet.

- 3 Are the sentences true or false?
 - 1 In Britain, voting in elections is more popular than voting in TV shows like Pop Idal for people under 24.
 - 2 The Green Party in the UK used to have a different name.
 - 3 The Green Party has been more successful in local and European elections than in general elections.
 - 4 The Green Party is in favour of scientific experiments on animals if they are really necessary.
 - 5 The Green Party is in favour of people using public transport instead of their cars.
 - The Green Party is the only party in Britain that talks about recycling and renewable energy.

Complete the paragraph with the highlighted words in the text

in exercise 2. Is the political system similar in your country?
In Britain, there are
when everybody aged 18 or older can 2 to decide the
next government. A few months before the election, all the
main political 3 publish a manifesto which describes
their most important 4 and says what they will do if
they win. They then ³ for people's votes by discussing
the issues on TV and radio. The candidates who get the most
votes win 6 in the f, which is the most important
part of the British * (The other part is called the House
of Lords.) There are often local elections at the same time,
when people choose their local ⁹

- 5 1.35 Listen to five teenagers giving their opinions about environmental issues. Match each speaker (1-5) with two opinions.
 - We should use solar and wind power to heat our water at home.
 - b We won't be able to use land-fill sites for much longer.
 - We should avoid travelling by plane.
 - d. We should use rockets to send rubbish into space.
 - e We shouldn't use cars for short journeys.
 - f. There's too much packaging on things we buy.
 - g. The government should ban large, powerful cars.
 - h. We shouldn't go on holiday to distant places.
 - We shouldn't replace gadgets and electrical appliances unless they are broken.
 -) The government should invest in renewable energy.
- 6 SPEAKING Do you agree or disagree with the opinions in exercise 5? Give reasons.
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Think of three things the local council or the public should do to help the environment where you live. Make notes. Then tell the class your opinions. Do they agree or disagree?
 - Vocabulary Builder 5.2: Compound nouns (1): p. 133

Future perfect and future continuous

I can talk about actions be the future and other they will express

Look at the picture. What do you think it is? Read the text and find out.



In twenty years' time, adventurous hollday-makers will have not of exciting things to do on earth. They will have been everywhere and tried everything. They'll be fooking for new adventures. That's why the Maxicom Hotel chain is planning to build a hotel on the moon.

Hotels in space have existed for years in science fiction stories, but Maxicom's plans are not fiction – they're real. By the end of this year, the company will have finished its design for the Lunar Palace Hotel. Soon after that, they will be starting the building work.

Read the Learn this! box. Underline all the examples of the future perfect and future continuous in the text in exercise 1. Then complete the rules.

Future perfect and future continuous

- 1 We form the future perfect with will have + past participle This time next week, I'll have done my exams.
- 2 We form the future continuous with will be + ·ing form This time next week, I'll be doing my exams.
- 3 We use the future ______ to talk about a completed action in the future.
- 4 We use the future ______ to talk about an action in progress in the future.
- 3 Look at Maxicom's timetable for the hotel on the moon. Then complete the sentences with the future perfect or future continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

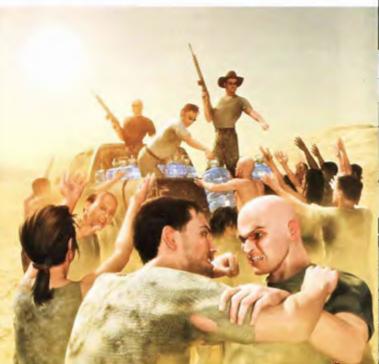
Start to build the hotal	Jan 2015		
Look for staff to work at the hotel	Jan-Jul 2017		
Start to advertise the hote	from Aug 2017		
Finish building the hotal	Dec 2017		
Train stafi	Jan-Jul 2018		
Welcome linst guests for one month holiday	Aug 2018		

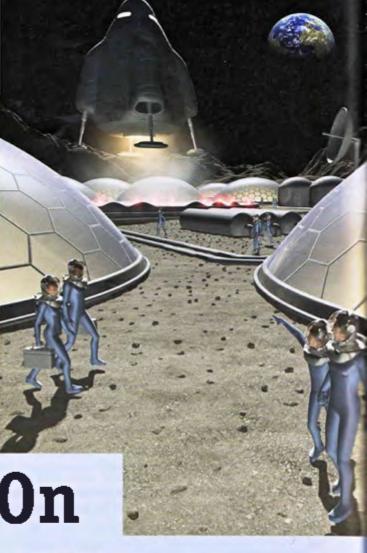
n the
tel. e hotel. I their
erfect
mputing lot of l ith
уоп
bout nd your
n't.
ill be

Visions of the future

I can undergrand and result to experts' productions for the future.

- Look at the pictures which show visions of the future fifty vears from now. Describe them.
- Which one do you think is the most likely to come true?





Fifty Years On

1 Sir David King, scientific adviser to the British Government

If we don't reduce carbon emissions, the earth will become warmer, polar ice will melt and the oceans will rise. Cities like London and New York will disappear under the water. By 2100, Antarctica could be the only continent that is suitable for human life – the rest of the world will be too hot.

2 Francis Collins, geneticist

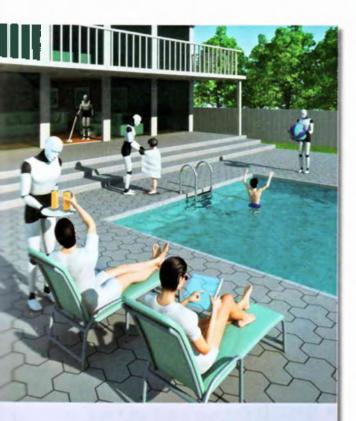
Fifty years from now, millions of people will live past the age of 100 and remain healthy. This will happen because we'll be able to study each person's genetic code and find the best way to treat and prevent illnesses in that individual. In about fifty years' time, the most important question for our society might not be 'How long can humans live?' but 'How long do we want to live?'

3 J Richard Gott, physicist

During the next fifty years, our earth might suffer a catastrophe. Humans could disappear, just like the dinosaurs and hundreds of other species. The best way to make humans safe from extinction is to start a colony on Mars. This is not a prediction but a hope. Will we be smart enough to do it?

4 Ellen Heber-Katz, biologist

I believe that soon we will be able to repair the human body in the same way that we can replace damaged parts of a car or a washing machine. Five years from now, we will be able to grow new fingers, and, a few years after that, new arms and legs. Within fifty years, replacing your whole body will be normal.



5 Peter Norvig, director of research at Google

Today, people all over the world have access to billions of pages of text on the Internet. At the moment, they use search engines to find information, but fifty years from now, people will simply discuss their needs with their computer, and the computer will make suggestions and provide usable information, not just a list of links.

6 Eric Horvitz, principal researcher at Microsoft Research

In fifty years' time, computers will be much more intelligent than today, and this will change people's lives. Computers will help people work, learn, plan and decide. They will help people from different countries to understand each other by automatically translating from one language to another, intelligent computers will work as scientists, and will start to make important discoveries on their own.

Reading tip

Then you're looking for specific information in the text, read the first sentence of each paragraph. The first sentence usually shows you what the whole paragraph will be about.

3	O			ead the texts and mate There is one opinion th	
	a	hopes that peo in case there's a terr		rill go and live on anoth	ner planet,
	þ	thinks that com		nsaster on Earth. rs will find things out v	vithout the
	c	help of humans predicts that th	e hự	nan race will become o	extinct.
			abo	it 2060 p <mark>eople</mark> may be	
	e	thinks that the	cold	st place on Earth migh	it one day
	F	have the best climat		humans. Ladvances will allow u	is to arow
	•	new limbs.	euic.	I AUVAIICES WILL ALIOW L	is to grow
	g			able to communicate d I tell us what we need	
4	М	atch the verbs and no	uns	to make phrases from	the texts.
		reduce	а	a catastrophe	
	-	treat		information	
		suffer		damaged parts	
	_	start		important discoveries	
		replace provide		carbon emissions a colony	
		make		illnesses	
5	Ct	omplete the sentence	s wit	n phrases from exercis	e 4.
	1	You of a ma	achir	e when it breaks down	
		They've developed n			
		The tourist office can			
		space.		cientists to a	
	5	We need to use our or global warming.	ars	ess in order to	_ and stop
	6	Nobody is certain wh	iat c	used the dinosaurs to	
	,	and become extinct.			
	′	England to		y, a group of pilgrims l irth America,	ŧπ
	0	Vocabulary Build	ler 5	3: Verb + noun colloca	tions: p. 133
6	R	DEAVING In your only	nion	which expert's predict	ian lo
•					ion is:
		the most optimistic? the most pessimistic			
		the most interesting:			
		the most likely to con			
7	W	ork in pairs. Make thr	ee p	edictions about the wo	orld in fifty
		ears' time. Use the ide			,
	1	buildings climate	omi	uters education	
				pace transport work	(

8 SPEAKING Tell the class your predictions. Do they agree or

EVERYDAY ENGLISH Talking about plans



What are your plans for the weekend? Kirsty Frank I'm playing tennis on Saturday afternoon. What about Sunday? Kirstv I'm going to stay in and do some homework during Frank the day. What about you? Have you got plans? Kirsty Yes, I have. I'm going to do some shopping on Saturday, and on Sunday, I'm having lunch with my family at a restaurant. Shall we do something on Saturday evening? I'm afraid I can't. My parents are going out and Frank they've asked me to babysit. Well, what about Sunday evening? Kirsty Sure. What do you fancy doing? Frank Why don't we go to the cinema? Kirsty That's a good idea. I'll find out what's on. Frank Kirsty OK. Let's speak again on Sunday morning. Frank Fine, I'll call you.

1.36 Read and listen to the dialogue. What are Kirsty and Frank planning to do this weekend? Write K (Kirsty) and F (Frank) next to the activities in the box.

do some homework do some shopping	go to the cinema play computer games	-
write some e-mails	read	
play tennis	watch a DVD	
visit relatives	have lunch at a restaurant	

2 Read the Learn this! box and underline all the examples of

the	tenses in the dialogue.
LEARN THIS!	 will, going to and present continuous 1 We use will for things we decide to do as we are speaking (Instant decisions, offers, promises). 2 We use going to for things we have already decided to do (intentions). 3 We use the present continuous for things we have already agreed to do, usually with somebody else (arrangements).

Grammar Builder 5.4: will, going to and present continuous: p. 116

I can suggest and agree on plans for the weekend.

- 3 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Practise reading the dialogue in exercise 1 replacing the words in red with your own ideas.
- 4 1:37 Listen to two dialogues. What does each pair arrange to do on Sunday evening?
 - 1 Michelle and Damien: _ 2 Paula and Richard: —
- 5 S 1.37 Read the Learn this! box below. Listen again and tick the phrases that the speakers use: four for making suggestions, two for accepting suggestions and two for declining suggestions.

Making suggestions

Shall we ... ? Why don't we / you ... ? Let's ... Do you fancy (+ -ing form)? Maybe we / you could ...

Accepting suggestions

Great idea. That's a good idea. Sure.

Declining suggestions

I'm afraid I can't. I don't really fancy (+ -ing form). Thanks, but I've already got plans for ... It's kind of you to ask, but ...

6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Practise making suggestions and reacting to them using phrases from the Learn this! box above. Use activities from the box in exercise 1 and your own ideas.

Why don't we watch a DVD? That's a good idea.

7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue using the chart below. Use phrases from exercise 5.

Ask what B's plans are for the weekend.

Say what your plans are for Saturday, Suggest doing something on Sunday afternoon,

Decline B's suggestion. Give a reason. Make a suggestion for Sunday evening.



Accept A's suggestion.

Offer to find out more information (e.g. times, prices, etc.).



Agree. Promise to call A at a specified time on Sunday.

8 SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class.

I can write an essay presenting my opinion for or against a statement.

Read the task below and the essay. Does the writer generally agree or disagree with the statement in the task? In which paragraph is the writer's opinion clearly stated?

Twenty years from now, the world will be a better place to live in.' Do you agree or disagree with the statement? Give reasons.

- The modern world is changing faster than at any time in history. This is creating problems for our planet, but it is also creating new and exciting apportunities. Twenty years from now, which will make the most difference to our lives - the problems or the opportunities? That is the key question.
- Many people are pessimistic about the future of our planet. They believe that entire regions will be uninhabitable because of global warming. Others ardue that the world will become more and more polluted, until it is no longer a safe or hea thy place to ive. It is true that global warming and pollution have both increased rapidly during the past twenty years. If they increase at the same rate during the next twenty. years, the situation will become disastrous.
- 3 On the other hand, there are many reasons to be optimistic about the future. During the next twenty years, there will be important advances in medicine and technology. Our lives will be healthier and more enjoyable because doctors will be able to cure most messes. What is more, I believe that scientists find ways to slow down or even prevent global warming.
- in conclusion, I believe that life will be better twenty. sears from now. Although there are serious problems facing the world. I don't think that the situation will get out of control. I believe science will advance quickly emough to find solutions.
- Choose the paragraph plan that matches the essay in exercise 1.
 - I An introduction to the main issues.
 - 2 Evidence to support the writer's own opinion.
 - 3 Evidence to support the opposite side of the argument. from the writer's opinion.
 - 4 A summary of the writer's opinion.
 - 1 A summary of the writer's opinion.
 - 2 An introduction to the main issues.
 - 3 Evidence to support the opposite side of the argument. from the writer's opinion.
 - 4 i vidence to support the writer's own opinion.

- c 1 An introduction to the main issues.
 - 2 Evidence to support the opposite side of the argument. from the writer's opinion.
 - 3 Evidence to support the writer's own opinion.
 - 4 A summary of the writer's opinion.

Look out!

Uthink + won't does not sound natural in English. It's better to use I don't think + will. I think I won't pass my exams. X

- I don't think I'll pass my exams. 🗸
- Read the Look out! box. Find an example of I don't think + will in the essay in exercise 1.
- Write sentences expressing your own ideas of the future in fifty years. Use I think or I don't think + will.
 - 1 robots / replace factory workers.
 - 2 doctors / be able to cure most diseases.
 - 3 new diseases / appear
 - 4 ordinary people / be much richer
 - 5 computers / be much cheaper
 - 6 global warming / cause serious problems
 - 7 Scientists / inventinew forms of transport.
 - 8 children / spend a lot of time playing outside
 - 9 most people / live much longer
- Read the task below and think about your own opinions. Use ideas from exercise 4 to help you.

'Fifty years from now, life will be much easier and healthier for ordinary people than it is today.' Do you agree or disagree with the statement? Give reasons.

Cupy the paragraph plan you chose in exercise 2 into your notebook. Then add your ideas from exercise 5.

Writing tip

Remember that we normally use the present simple in future time clauses beginning when,

When I reach my sixties, people will retire much later. People will have to find greener alternatives to cars when fossil fuels run out.

- Grammar Builder 5.5: Future time clauses: p. 116
- Read the writing tip. Then write an essay of 200-250 words following your plan from exercise 6.

Get ready for your EXAM 5

1 Get ready to READ Look at the sports in the box. How old do you think they are? Underline the ones that you think were known in ancient Egypt.

boxing cricket curling hockey horse riding javelin rugby swimming wrestling yoga

- 2 Read the text in the exam task quickly. What sports from exercise 1 are mentioned in the text?
- 3 Do the Reading exam task.

READING exam task

Six sentences have been removed from the text. Choose from sentences A–G the one that best fits each gap, There is one sentence that you don't need.

SPORTS IN ANCIENT EGYPT

Egypt has been called the cradle of human civil sation, and museums are full of fascinating and beautiful artefacts taken. from the burial chambers of the pharaohs. People led normal lives and enjoyed many of the same things that we still enjoy today. For example, physical fitness was almost a national obsession. From about 3,000 kg up until the Roman occupation, Egypt was a land of people training and strengthening their bodies. 2 The murals depict both men and women of all social classes participating in sports. The oldest shows a pharaoli who lived in about 3,000 sc, which is over 5,000 years ago. We can see him participating in a running competition. 3 Athletics, wrestling and other games were also very popular among children. In fact, it would probably be easier to list the sports not practised in Egypt than mention all those we know were popular. Although many people associate Egypt with sand and deserts, it is a land whose existence revolves around its river – the Nile. 1 They used most of the strokes we know today. Wrestling, boxing and other types of combat sport. were also commonly practised. Yoga, which is not usually

The idea of sport for leisure was widespread but the Egyptians also enthusiastically organised championships and held competitions. ⁶ In order to make sure decisions were made fairly, without national bias, the judges were also from various countries. Naturally, the competitions attracted plenty of participants as well as spectators.

connected with Egypt, was popular as well. [2]

- A It is therefore hardly surprising that swimming was a particular favourite of the ancient Egyptians.
- B Some of these were on an international scale, with participants from neighbouring countries.
- C Hatshepsut, a pharaoh queen of the 18th dynasty, seemed to enjoy the same sport and other rulers were equally fit and active.

- D But there was more to life in ancient Egypt than building pyramids and mummifying bodies.
- E And the famous murals, the pictures which decorated their tombs and temples, are still there to tell us the story of these activities.
- F That is why we know so much about ancient Egyptian sports and the clothes that were generally worn while participating in them.
- G Another activity not usually associated with the ancient Egyptians is horse riding, which was keenly pursued once horses had been introduced to Egypt in 1650 ac.
- 4 Do the Use of English exam task.

USE OF ENGLISH exam task

Complete the text with the correct form of the words given.

Chess-boxing

Most people would regard chess and boxing as so different that they are a most opposites: one relies on physical '______ (STRONG), courage and aggression, the other on mental '_____ (CONCENTRATE), planning and tactics. But despite (or perhaps because of) these '_____ (DIFFERENT), a new sport has been

invented which combines the two: chess-boxing. In a chess-boxing match, the two: (COMPETE) take part in alternating rounds of chess and boxing. The contest starts with a round of chess, followed by a round of boxing, followed by another round of chess, and so on, up to a maximum of eleven rounds: six of chess and five of boxing. The rounds of chess are a minute? (LONG) than the rounds of boxing. You achieve victory in a chess-boxing match by (MIN) either the chess or the boxing. In the chess rounds, you can win by checkmate, or by your opponent running out of time on

boxing, the "______ (PLAY) with the black chess pieces wins. Chess-boxing is a minority sport, but it is growing "______ (STEADY). The first world championship was held in Berlin in 2007 and was won by a 37-year-old German policeman "_____ (NAME) Frank Stoldt thanks to a checkmate in the chess in round seven.

the clock. In the boxing, you can win by a knock-out or by the referee's '_____ (DECIDE). If there is no winner at chess or

- 5 Get ready to SPEAK. Work in pairs. Read the task in exercise 6 and think of three arguments in favour of the statement and three against it. Then compare your ideas with the class.
- 6 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Do you agree or disagree with this statement? Give reasons, Professional sportswomen should earn as much money as professional sportsmen.

Get ready for your EXAM 6

Look at the picture. What do you think this is? Use may, might or could.



This might be a toy from the future.

Oh, I'm not sure. It could be a piece of art.

Work in pairs. Choose two household appliances from the box below. How do you think they will change in the future?

coffee maker cooker iron kettle oven refrigerator toaster vacuum cleaner washing machine

So the Listening exam task.

LISTENING exam task

Listen to three young people talking about a special fridge.

Match the opinions 1–8 to the speakers.

	Which speaker	Anna	Jon	Mark
1	thinks the fridge will use too much electricity?			
Z	has a bad memory?			
3	thinks cleaning the fridge might be difficult?			
4	likes the way the fridge opens?			
5	believes the fridge could find many buyers?			
6	likes the fact the fridge is so unusual?			
7	doesn't find the fridge pretty?			
8	believes the fridge could be ececational?			

- Work in pairs. Look at the list of porkplaces below and, for each one, decide:
- whether you are likely find robots or other ni-tech machines there.
- what the robots or hi-tech machines might do.
 - a small farm a large factory a TV studio a hospital a caté a school an artist's studio a small hotel

- 5 Work in pairs. Discuss which of these tasks robots or machines:
 - a can do now.
 - b will probably be able to do in the near future.
 - 1 fly an aircraft
 - 2 perform surgery in a hospital
 - 3 teach students in a classroom
 - 4 make computers in a factory
 - 5 go on missions into space
 - 6 drive a taxi.
 - 7 perform music on stage
 - 8 serve customers in a shop
 - 9 give help and advice to people who are depressed
 - 10 take part in the Olympic Games

What other tasks will robots be able to do in the near future, in your opinion?

6 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Compare and contrast the two photos. Answer the questions.





- 1 What is being made in each photo?
- 2 What are the advantages and disadvantages of making things by hand?
- 3 What are the advantages and disadvantages of using robots to make things?
- 4 Is there anything which could not be made by a robot, in your opinion?

Telling tales

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING Murder in the library

Find these things in the pictures. What other objects can you identIfy?

House and garden armchair balcony basin bookcase carpet chandelier chest of drawers cooker cupboard curtains dining table drainpipe fireplace flowerbed hedge lawn mirror path rug sink sofa stepladder stool vase wardrobe

- 2 2.01 Millionaire Lord Snodbury has been murdered, Listen to the interviews with Inspector Fox who is investigating the murder. Match the people with the descriptions.
 - Martha is:
 - 2 Harold is
 - 3 Lord Algernon is
 - 4 Lady Snodbury is
- a the gardener.
- b Lord Snodbury's wife.
- Lord Snodbury's son and heir.
- d the cook.













THIS UNIT INCLUDES ••*

Vocabulary • house and garden • compound nouns (2) • phrasal verbs Grammar • must have, might have, can't have • reported speech (statements)

 Say and tell * reported speech (questions) * verbs with two objects Speaking - deciding who committed a crime - role-playing a TV interview

negotiating and compromising

Writing • a furma, letter: making a reservation

I can decide who committed a crime.

3 2.01 Listen again. Complete the Inspector's notes from the interviews.

Lord Snodbury's murder
met exactly 6 p.m. Placet the library
ithess statements:
ertha 'van preparing! in the i ot 6 p.o
ys Lord Snodbury is 'mean and 3
urold was cutting * in the 5 at 6 p.m."
rd argued with Lord Snodpury about 6 Received
from Lord Algernon.
rd Algernan was ^g in his ^g at 5 p.m.
ent to library ¹⁰ minutes later.' Had argued with
rd Snodbury abone his i' to Enema Jones.
dy Snodbury was arranging 12 in the 13
5 p.m. Heard gunskot and went to the 14 Lord
perkon arrived there 15 minutes later."

- - Martha must have murdered Lord Snodbury.
 - 2 Martha might have murdered Lord Snodbury.
 - Martha can't have murdered Lord Snodbury.
 - It's impossible that Martha murdered Lord Snodbury.
 - It seems certain that Martha murdered Lord Snodbury.
 - c It's possible that Martha murdered Lord Snodbury.
 - Grammar Builder 6.1: must have, might have, can't hove: p. 116
- SPEAKING Work in pairs. Who do you think murdered Lord Snodbury? Discuss the evidence in the interviews and the pictures.

It can't have been because ..

> It might have been. because ..

It must have been because ..

- 2.02 Vote for who you think killed Lord Snodbury, Listen to Inspector Fox's conclusion. Were you correct?
 - Vocabulary Builder 6.1: House and garden: p. 133

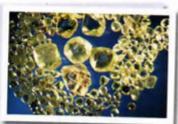
Read the text. Where did the diamonds originally come from?

a San Francisco

b a secret location

c London

The Great Diamond Hoax



One night in 1871, two men called Philip Arnold and John Slack arrived at the San Francisco office of a rich businessman called George Roberts and said that they had come to discuss important business with him. They were carrying a small, leather bag and Amold told Roberts that it contained diamonds. They said that they had found the diamonds in a secret location the week before and that they were looking for businessmen to invest in the mine. An expert examined the diamonds and confirmed that they were genuine, so Roberts told the men that he was happy to invest there and then. News of the new mine spread quickly and in the following weeks, lots of businessmen gave thousands of dollars to Arnold and Slack, When some of the investors wanted to visit the secret location, Arnold and Slack sald they would take them there the next day. Arnold told them that they could dig for diamonds themselves, and when they did, they soon found some. But it was all a hoax. In fact, Arnold and Slack had bought the diamonds in London for \$35,000, returned to the USA and buried them in the earth. The diamonds were real but the mine was fake. Arnold and Slack disappeared with \$660,000 of investors' money.

- Read the quotations below of what was said. Underline the parts of the text in exercise 1 that match them.
 - 1 'We've come to discuss important business with you.'
 - 2 'It contains diamonds.'
 - 3 'We found the diamonds in a secret location last week.'
 - 4 "We're looking for businessmen to invest in the mine."
 - 5 "I'm happy to invest here and now."
 - 6 'We'll take you there tomorrow.'
 - 7 You can dig for the clamonds yourselves."
- Compare the quotations in exercise 2 with the parts of the text that you underlined. Complete the table with the correct tenses and words.

Direct speech		Reported speech
1	1 present simple gast simple	
2		past continuous
3	past simple	
4		past perfect
5	can	
6		would

Read point 1 in the Learn this! box. Find examples of pronouns that change when you change from direct to reported speech in exercises 1 and 2.

When you change direct to reported speech

- 1 the pronouns often change: I, you, we, they, myself, yourself, etc.
- 2 time expressions often change: today, tomorrow, yeslerday, last month, etc.
- 5 Read point 2 in the Learn this! box. Match the time expressions (1-5) to the time expressions (a-e).

Di	Direct speech		Reported speech		
1	today	а	the next week		
2	tonight	Ь	the month before		
3	next week	c	that day		
4	yesterday	d	that night		
5	last month	e	the day before		

6 Look again at exercises 1 and 2. Find three other time expressions that change.

Grammar Builder 6.2: Reported speech (statements): p. 11

Look out!

say and tell

tell somebody (something)

He told me his news. NOT He said me his news.

say something (to somebody)

He said hello to his friend.

- 7 Read the Look out! box. How many examples of say and tell are in the text in exercise 1?
- 8 Complete the sentences with said or told. Then rewrite the direct speech as reported speech.
 - If don't believe your story, Jack and to his sister.
 Jack said to his refer that his didn't believe not story.
 - 2 "I've spent all my money," his mother _____
 - 3 'We'll be in London tomorrow,' she ._____ ner friend.
 - 4 "Larrived yesterday." _____ Mary.
 - 5 'You always spoil my fun!' Jack ______ his sister.
 - 6 "I'm not listening to you," Suz e ___ her dad.
 - 7 "We can't see you until next week," they _____ me.
- SPEAKING Think of something that somebody told you which you didn't believe. Why didn't you believe it? Tell the class.

My brother once told me that he'd seen a wolf in our garden, but I didn't believe him because he's always making things up. He probably saw a dog.

CULTURE Myth or reality?

- Look at the photos in the text. What can you see?
- Read the text, ignoring the gaps. Answer the questions with your own ideas and opinions.
 - 1. Why do you think so many people have reported sightings. of a monster?
 - 2 Why do you think Wilson produced a fake photo?
 - 3. Why do you think Spurling waited 60 years before. admitting that the photo was a hoax?



The Loch Ness Monster

Loch Ness is a beautiful lake in the highlands of Scotland. It's a popular place for tourists, partly because of the beautiful scenery, but also because it is traditionally the home of Nessie, the Loch Ness Monster. However, in spite of the number of sightings, there wasn't any real evidence until 1934 when an English surgeon called Wilson took a famous photograph, 2 The black and white photo clearly showed a creature with a long neck and a small head, and some experts said that it might be a Plesiosaur, a creature from the time of the dinosaurs.

However, other people believed that the photo was a fake. They said that the Loch was only 10,000 years old, much too recent for a Plesiosaur. For nearly 60 years, people asked themselves if the photo was genuine or fake. Then, in 1993, the truth came out: a film director called Wetherell had arranged the photo as a hoax. He had asked a man called lan Spurling if he could make a model of the monster, Sixty years later, when he was 90 years old, Spurling admitted that the 'monster' was in fact a toy submarine!

Although Wilson's photo was fake, there have been lots of other reports of a monster in the lake since. Many people still believe that something strange lives there. 1 And you don't need to visit Loch Ness to look for the monster. You can visit www.lochness.co.uk and look for Nessie on the live webcam!



- 3 Match the sentences to the gaps in the text (1-4). There is one sentence that you do not need.
 - Wilson said that his photo showed the monster.
 - b. In fact, scientists are still looking, using boats, submarines and cameras.
 - c There have been many reports of a strange creature in. Loch Ness since the sixth century.
 - d But Wilson always claimed that his photo was genuine.

e Plesiosaurs had long necks and small heads, and they lived in deep water.

Describe the photo. Where is the creature? What do you think it might be?



- 2:03 Listen to the programme about the mysterious creature, Sasquatch. How many sightings does it describe?
- 2.03 Listen again. Are the sentences true or false?
 - The earliest stories of Sascuatch come from Native Americans who lived in the North West.
 - 2 In 1884, some men captured a creature that they named 'Jacko'. It was like a human but taller and stronger.
 - 3 They didn't take 'Jacko' back to London because the creature didn't want to leave its home.
 - 4. Albert Ostman claimed that he spent six days camping in the mountains.
 - Albert Ostman told his story 33 years later.
 - 6 In 1988, a boy saw Sasquatch while he was fishing.
 - 7 Sasquatch is white with a pink face.
- Work in pairs, imagine that one of you has seen a Sasquatch.
 - what you were doing when you saw it
 - what it looked like
 - what it did
 - how you reacted when you saw it
- 8 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Role-play a dialogue using your notes from exercise 7. One of you is the witness, the other is a TV news reporter.

I understand that you recently saw a creature that you believe to be a Sasquatch.

That's right.

Could you tell me what you were doing at the time?

Well. I was ...

I and report questions which other people have aiked.

Describe the picture. Why do you think the old man is there?
What might they be talking about?



2.04 Complete the interview with the questions. Then listen and check.

Can you describe him?
Are you sure?
What did you see?
Why are you smiling, inspector?
Do you recognise any of these men?
How many men did you see?
Will you have a look at these photos?
Have you had a cup of tea?

Police Inspe	ector Good morning, Mr Brown. Come in.		
Mr Brown	Yes, I have, thank you.		
PI	I'd like to ask you a few questions. First, 2		
Mr Brown	I saw the men running out of the post office.		
PI	1		
Mr Brown	Two. One of them was carrying a gun.		
PI	4		
Mr Brown	He was quite tall. He had long dark hair and he was wearing jeans and a leather jacket.		
Pl	5		
Mr Brown	Yes, of course.		
Pl	h		
Mr Brown	Um, let me see Yes, that's him!		
PI	<u>/</u>		
Mr Brown 연	Yes, absolutely certain. 8 Because we arrested him this morning!		

Mr Brown went home and told his wife about the interview.
This is what he said. Underline all the reported questions.

First, the inspector asked me if I'd had a cup of tea, which was very kind. But I'd just had one. Anyway, then she asked me what I'd seen, so I told her about the man. And she asked me if I could describe him. Well, I could, of course. Then she asked me if I would have a look at some photos and asked me if I recognised any of the men in them. And I did! It was the man with the gun! She asked me if I was sure. But I'd recognise him anywhere. The inspector had a big grin on her face, so I asked her why she was smiling. She told me they had arrested the man that morning!

4 Compare the questions in the dialogue with the reported questions in exercise 3. Then choose the correct words in the *Learn this!* box to complete the rules.

Reported questions

In reported questions

- 1 the reporting verb is ask / say / tell.
- 2 the tense changes are / aren't are the same as for reported statements. (See page 55 if necessary.)
- 3 the subject comes before / after the verb.
- 4 we use / don't use do or did.
- 5 we use if / that when we report yes/no questions.

Fig. 6 Grammar Builder 6.3: Reported speech (questions): p. 118

5	Read	the dialogue. Then complete the text
	Rob	Can I go out tonight?

Mum Where are you planning to go?

Rob I want to see the new Brad Pitt film,
Mum Have you got much homework?

Rob No. I haven't. The teacher didn't give us any.Mum OK. Do you want to eat before you go?Rob Yes, please. Is there any pasta?

Rob asked 1	that night.
His mum asked hi	m ²
Rob told 3	film. Then she
4	homework. He said he didn't.
He added that the	teacher 3
His mum agreed th	nat he could go out and asked him
6	Rob said he did and asked
7	

Write down six questions to ask your partner. Use a different tense or verb from the box in each question.

present simple present continuous past simple present perfect can will

What kind of music do you like?

- 7 SPEAKING Play a class game in two teams.
 - One pair from team 1 asks and answers a question from exercise 6.

What kind of music do you like?

I like dance music.

 One person from team 2 has to remember and report the question and answer.

Nick asked Fiona what kind of music she liked. Fiona said that she liked dance music.



I'm your long-lost son! Roger Tichborne (above) and Arthur Orton (right)

The trial of Arthur Orton

- A Over 150 years ago, a rich woman in England called Lady Tichborne put advertisements in newspapers around the world. They announced that she was looking for news about her son, Sir
- 5 Roger Tichborne, who had been on a ship called The Bella travelling back from South America in 1854. The Bella had sunk, and all passengers were presumed drowned, but Lady Tichborne refused to believe that Roger had died.
- 10 B Eleven years after the accident Lady Tichborne received a letter from a lawyer in Sydney, Australia. The lawyer explained that he was representing a man called Arthur Orton. Orton had told the lawyer that he was Lady Tichborne's
- 5 son. Overjoyed, Lady Tichborne asked an old family servant who was now living in Sydney to visit Orton and corroborate his story. The servant remembered a slim, dark-haired young man, but found Orton to be fat with light brown hair. However, Orton could remember so many details about the family that he soon convinced the servant that he was Sir Roger.
- C So, Orton met Lady Tichborne in Paris. She was French and had taught Roger to speak the language fluently. When she saw Orton she was so happy to have her precious son back, even though he looked rather different and couldn't speak a word of French, Lady Tichborne promised Orton that he would receive £1,000 a year. Once Lady
- 30 Tichborne had accepted him, many other friends and family members did the same. However, several members of the family were unhappy. They alleged that the man was an impostor, but Lady Tichborne ignored them.
- 35 D When Lady Tichborne died, Orton wanted to claim all of the family land and money from Lady Tichborne's younger son, Henry. The family

here was a famous trial that lasted 188 days.

Over 100 witnesses claimed that Orton was Sir
Roger. However, the lawyers proved that Orton
had been born in London, the son of a butcher.

The jury found him guilty and he was sentenced
to ten years in prison. Many people who had
supported him refused to believe the truth
and started a protest in the streets of London.

However, when he left prison in 1884 everyone
had forgotten him. In 1885, Orton confessed
that he had been an impostor all along, but later
the claimed he was innocent. He died in poverty
1898, and his coffin still bears the name Sir
Roger Tichborne!

- Read the text quickly. Match four of the topics with the paragraphs (A-D).
 - 1 The case comes to court
 - Sir Roger Tichborne lost at sea?
 - 3 Ameeting in Europe
 - The impostor's early life
 - 5 News from Australia
- Choose the best answers.
 - Lady Tichborne put advertisements in newspapers because
 - a she wanted to contact her son on The Bella.
 - b she didn't believe that The Bella had sunk.
 - c. She thought that her son was still alive.
 - d her son hadr't written to her for a long time.
 - 2 The Australian lawyer contacted Lady Tichborne because
 - a he was her son,
 - b Arthur Orton had told him that he was Sir Roger.
 - c. he saw one of the newspaper advertisements.
 - d Arthur Orton wanted to return to England.
 - 3 When a former family servant met Orton in Australia
 - a. he was sure that Orton was Lady Tichhorne's son because Orton could remember a lot of things about the family.
 - b he didn't think that Orton was Lady Tichborne's son because he was fatter and his hair was a different colour.
 - c he wasn't sure if Orton was Lady Tichborne's son.
 - d he didn't think he was Lady Tichborne's son, but he told her that he was convinced.

- 4 Lady Tichborne
 - all taught Orton to speak French when he arrived in Paris.
 - b had taught Sir Roger to speak French.
 - c could speak French, but Sir Roger hadn't learnt the language.
 - di was so happy because Orton could speak French.
- 5 Lady Tichborne believed Orton was her son
 - a and so did her family and friends.
 - b but her family ignored Orton.
 - c but none of her family believed Orton.
 - d but some members of her family thought she was wrong.
- 6 At the trial
 - a. Orton admitted he wasn't Sir Roger.
 - b the jury believed Orton's story.
 - Oiton was found guilty.
 - d 100 witnesses gave evidence.
- 7 After Orton came out of prison

a wine glass a beer glass

- a nobody remembered him and he died fourteen years later, a poor man.
- bill everyone said that he was an impostor.
- c people protested in the streets of London.
- d he always insisted that he was Sir Roger.
- 3 Read the Learn this! box. Find three examples of the noun family used like an adjective in the text. Does it come before or after the noun?

Compound nouns: nouns functioning as adjectives
We can use a noun like an adjective to define
another noun.

a hom sandwich an egg sandwich
a football team a volleyball team

- Vocabulary Builder 6.2: Compound nouns (2): p. 134
- 4 Complete the text about Orton's trial. Use the words in the box.

guilty innocent jury lawyers prison prove sentenced trial witnesses

At his '_____ in London, the '_____ tried to '_____ that Orton was an impostor. Orton claimed that he was *_____, and many '_____ corroborated his story. However, the '_____ found him '_____ and he was '_____ to ten years in '_____.

5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Tell your partner three things about your past – two true and one imaginary. Don't say which one is not true. Can your partner guess?

I can negotiate and CONTRIBUTION ISS.

names.

7

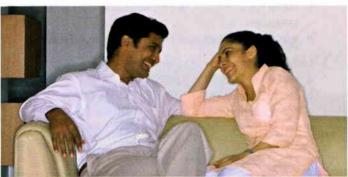
8

own ideas.

1 go for a walk.

3 play cards

First dialogue: Tanya and Peter



William What shall we do tonight? Do you fancy going out? Mmm. Not really. I'm not in the mood. I think I'd rather stay in and watch TV. William But there's nothing worth watching on the telly tonight, Let's go and see a film. Jessica But I don't want to go out, I'm tired. We could get a DVD instead. William Maybe, but I still think it would be nice to go out. Jessica Why don't I cook you a meal? William That sounds nice. What will you cook? Jessica I'll do your favourite - steak and chips. William OK, you've persuaded me, I'll go and fetch a DVD. Jessica And I'll start cooking!

- 1 See 2.05 Cover the dialogue. Listen and answer the
 - 1 What does Jessica want to do at first?
 - 2 What does William want to do at first?
 - 3 What do they finally agree to do?
- Read the dialogue and check your answers.
- 3 Look at the coloured phrases in the dialogue. Match them with the functions in the box.

compr sugges	omising or agreeing sting	objecting	persuading
green blue		red orange	3

Intransitive phrasal verbs

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive. They do not take a direct object and you cannot separate the verb and the preposition.

carry on wake up break down get up I asked him to stop, but he carried on walking.

- 4 Read the Learn this! box. Then find two more intransitive phrasal verbs of this kind in the dialogue.
 - Vocabulary Builder 6.3: Intransitive phrasal verbs: p. 134

1	wants to go for a walk.
2	doesn't want to go on a bike ride.
3	suggests going swimming.
4	doesn't really want to walk to the pool.
5	offers to buy ice creams for both of them.
Sec	cond dialogue: Ann and David
6	suggests going to the cinema.
7	hasn't got much money.
8	doesn't like badminton.
9	suggests chess.
10	suggests playing cards.
S	2.06 Listen again, Complete the sentences.
	st dialogue: Tanya and Peter
	go out for a walk?
	fancy it. It's too hot.
	a bike ride, then?
4	Oh, on!
5	OK, you've it.
Sec	cond dialogue: Ann and David
6	to the cinema.
7	You'll when you get there.
8	a game of badminton?
	I'm badminton.
10	OK, not?
	2.07 PRONUNCIATION Listen, check and repeat. Copy the conation.
	tch the sentences in exercise 6 with the four functions in excise 3.
	EAKING Work in pairs. Use phrases from exercise 6 and the logue in exercise 1.
Çŧ.	ident A. Make a suggestion. Use the activities below or you

5 2.06 Listen. Complete the sentences with the correct

10 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue like the one in exercise 1. Each of you should suggest something to do, make objections and then agree on a compromise.

Student B: Object to it. Give a reason for objecting.

2 go out for something to eat 5 play computer games.

4 do some homework together

6 listen to music

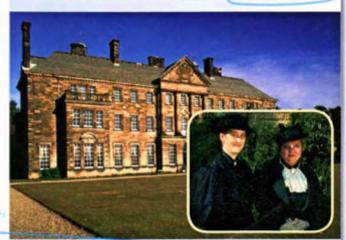
Not really. It's too cold out.

11 SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class.

Do you fancy going for a walk?

MURDER MYSTERY WEEKEND

19-21 August



The murderer is one of your group, it could be YOU! Stay in our beautiful country house hotel near the historic city of York. On arrival, we will give you a character to play and a costume to wear.

Come as an individual or come as a group (minimum ten people) and have a murder mystery weekend just with your friends.

Phone 08716 7287 for more information.

socke to Mis kleatherby, who will senio are from (Can are send by e-mail) ecto (500) deposit. How much is itotal? we need to send sizes

- Read the advertisement. What do you think happens at a 'Murder Mystery Weekend'? Would you enjoy it?
- Read the notes that Tyler added to the advertisement. Then read his letter. What information does he forget to include?

Dear Ms Weatherby

Further to our recent talaphone conversation, I am writing to confirm that I wish to make a reservation for the Murder Mystery Weekend from 19 to 21 August.

There will be twelve people in our party and we will require six twin rooms in total. I would be very grateful if you could give us rooms on the same floor.

On the telephone, you mentioned that you would send me directions by post. Would it be possible to e mail me the directions instead so that I can forward them to everyone in our group?

l am enclosing a cheque for £800 as a deposit. Please could you confirm the total amount due? I assume that the balance will be payable at the end of the weekend. Would you mind sending me a receipt for the deposit?

Hook forward to hearing from you in due course.

Yours sincerely

Typer I lamium

Mr T Hamlyo.

- Find the phrases in the letter.
 - A phrase for referring back to a telephone conversation.
 - A more formal way of saying 'I want to ...'.
 - A phrase meaning 'a room with two beds'.
 - 4 Four different ways of making polite requests:

¹	grateful		_
	11 h	-	

- possible
- c Please _____ __ _ ...? d Would _____ ...?
- 5. A phrase that anticipates a reply to the letter.
- 6 The phrase that comes immediately before the sender's. signature.

Verbs with two objects

1 Some verbs can be followed by both an indirect and a direct object.

My causin wrote me a letter. John bought his girlfriend a CD.

- 2 The indirect object comes first and is usually a person. The direct object is usually a thing.
- 3 If we want the direct object to come first, we must put to or for before the indirect object.

My cousin wrote a letter to me. John bought a CD for his girlfriend.

- Read the Learn this! box. Find three verbs with two objects in the letter.
- 5 Rewrite the sentences. Replace the phrase with to or for with an indirect object after the verb.
 - 1 Can you do a favour for me?
 - 2 Would you mind showing your pictures to us?
 - 3 She read her poem to the class.
 - 4 He cooked dinner for his friends.
 - 5 I'm going to tell that story to my brother.
 - 6 They cidn't offer any food to their guests.
 - Grammar Builder 6.4: Verbs with two objects: p. 119
- Plan a formal letter to Ms Weatherby making a reservation. Include this information:
 - the dates of your stay and the number of guests/rooms.
 - correct some information you gave on the phone, e.g. one friend is a vegetarian (and the hotel needs to know this).
 - request a brochure or leaflet, if the hotel has one.
 - make an additional request or instruction.
- Write a formal letter making a reservation of 120-150 words. Use your notes from exercise 6.

LANGUAGE REVIEW 5-6

Vocabulary

1 Complete the text with the words in the box.

blog flash drive laptop web cam website wireless router

Brad has got all the latest computer technology. When he wants to video chat with his friends he uses the '_____ on his main computer. He's got a 2_____ which he takes to work, but he can go online in any room in his house because of the 2_____ he has in the living room. He's designed his own 4_____ where he posts his photos and writes his thoughts on his 2_____, He saves all his files on a 4____ which he keeps in the drawer of his desk.

Mark /6

2 Complete the words to make objects in the house.

- 1 a c ...′
- 4 b . . k s .
- 2 c__b__r_
- 5 m _ _ r _ _
- 3 с р
- sw.d.b

Mark

/6

Grammar

- 3 Correct the sentences.
 - 1 | I think I won't get married until I'm 30.
 - 2 Reece might to buy a flat if he earns enough money.
 - 3 If Erin will pass her driving test, she'll buy a car.
 - 4 Toby could not go to university because he doesn't like studying.
 - 5. Isabelle goes to university if she passes her exams.

Mark /5

4 Complete Kai's life plan with the future continuous or the future perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

Liter (finish) university by the time I'm 22 and then I'ld get a job. By the time I'm 30 if then I'ld get a job. By the time I'm 30 if then I'ld get a job. By the time I'm 30 if then years time I if the I'm 35 we if the I'm 35 we if the I'm and they if the I'm and they if the I'm and I retire. I think life is going to be good to me.

Mark

- 5 Rewrite the direct speech as reported speech.
 - 1 'I didn't finish the report yesterday,' said Rebecca. Rebecca said _______
 - 2 "I'm having problems with my computer," she said. She said.
 - 3 "Thaven't been able to log onto the Internet this week,"
 she told Ben.
 She told
 - 4 'T'll look at it lor you some time today,' said Ben.
 - 5 "Il you can mend my computer, l'Il cook you dinner," said Rebecca.
 - Rebecca told Ben _______6 'That sounds fine by me,' said Ben.
 - 6 That sounds fine by me," said Ben.
 Ben said

Mark

/6

Everyday English

- 6 Put the lines (a-e) in the correct order to complete the dialogue.
 - a I haven't got anything planned either. Shall we go out on Saturday night?
 - b I don't really fancy dancing. Shall we go out for dinner?
 - c. Great idea. Maybe we could try that new Italian?
 - d OK. Let's go dancing.
 - e Nothing special. How about you?

Boy What are you doing this weekend?

Girl ...

Giri -

Boy

Girl =

Boy Why not? Shall I book a table?

Mark

/5

- 7 Put the words in the correct order.
 - 1 $\,$ really / tennis / playing / in / for / not / mood / the / $\rm Fm$
 - 2 on / worth / TV / watching / There's / nothing
 - 3 really / to / centres / into / I'm / going / shopping / not
 - 4 there / enjoy / You'll / you / it / get / when
 - 5 talked / out / dinner / me / You've / going / into / for

Mark

/5

Total

/38

EXAM CHALLENGE Workbook pages 94-97

SKILLS ROUND-UP 1-6

Speaking

1 Work in pairs. Talk about your plans for the weekend, Use phrases from the box to help you.

What are your plans for ...? What about you? What are you up to on ...?

Reading

Read the descriptions of four flats (A-D). If you had to live in one of them, which would you choose, and why?

Two-bedroom flat, furnished

Above a shop, very close to the city centre. The accommodation consists of one double. bedroom; and one single bedroom, a bathroom (with bath, no shower), and a living room with kitchen area. Modern furniture and brand new cooker and fridge. (No washing machine.)

Available from 1 November Monthly rent: £750 Deposit: £750

One-bedroom flat, unfurnished

Basement flat in a quiet, residential area. Accommodation comprises one large bedroom, a small study, a living room and a separate kitchen equipped with cooker, fridge and washing machine. There is a bathroom with a bath and a shower.

Available from 15 August Monthly rent: £700 Deposit: £1,400

Studio flat, furnished

Unusually spacious, ground floor studio flat for rent. Combined living room/bedroom measures 5 x 6 metres. Separate kitchen with electric cooker, fridge and microwave (no washing machine). Shower room and separate WC. Rent includes broadband connection.

> Available from 1 December Monthly rent: £600 Deposit: £1,000

- 3 Match the sentences with the flats (A-D). There is one sentence that you do not need.
 - This flat is ready to move into now.
 - You don't have to pay extra to use the Internet in this flat.
 - You can do your laundry in this flat.
 - 4. The deposit for this flat is less than a month's rent.
 - There are beds for three people in this flat.

Listening

4 2.08 Which flat from exercise 2 does Marek go to see?



- 5 2.08 Listen again. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Is the flat above or below the level of the pavement?
 - 2. Is the main room bigger or smaller than Marek imagined?
 - 3 What surprises Marek about the kitchen?
 - 4 What does Marek think of the shower room and WC?
 - 5 How many other flats has Marek arranged to see?

Writing

6 Write a questionnaire with six questions to find out as much as possible about your partner's house or flat. Use the ideas in the box to help you.

house or flat? which floor? number of bedrooms? near or far from the town centre? large living room? modern or old-tashioned furniture? satellite TV? broadband Internet? washing machine?

One-bedroom flat, furnished

A beautiful flat on the sixth floor of a tower block, with stunning views over the city. The accommodation consists of a bedroom with single bed and wardrobe, a living room, a bathroom, and a kitchen with cooker, fridge and microwave (no washing machine). Rent includes heating but excludes electricity. Satellite TV included in rent.

Available immediately Monthly rent: £550 Deposit: £750

True love?

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING Relationships

THIS UNIT INCLUDES

Vocabulary • dating and relationships • time expressions • three-part phrasal yedge Grammar • comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs

second conditional • twish, if only, Cd rather • question tags • in, of and on with

Speaking * telling the story of a relationship * making conversation Writing . an informal lefter: reply to an invitation

I ence talk about during and relationships.

1 Work in pairs. Put the phrases in the box into the order that they might happen in a relationship.

Dating and relationships ask somebody out chat somebody up fancy somebody fall in love (with somebody) fall out (with somebody) get back together (with somebody) get divorced get engaged (to somebody) get married (to somebody) get on well (with somebody) go out (with somebody). make up split up (with somebody).

2 Complete the story with in, on, out, up, with or nothing.

Zak and Lily met at a party in 1994. Zak fancied Lily. the moment he saw her. He started to chat her 2 they got "_____ really well. Lily thought Zak was cute, but she was already going ⁴_____ somebody. Zak and Lily didri't see each other for a few months. Then Zak heard from a triend that Lily had split up 🔪 her boyfriend. Zak phoned Lify the same day - he didn't want to give her time to get back logether ⁵_____ her boyfriend! He asked her ⁷_____ . She said yes, and Zak and Lily went burn for three months. They felt ".. love. It wasn't an easy relationship they were always failing 10____ and then making 15____ again - but they stayed together. After about six months, they got engaged 12_____, and a year after that, they got married 13..____, More than ten years later, many of their friends have got divorced. but Zak and Lily are still together.

2.09 Listen. What is happening in each scene? Use expressions from exercise 1.

Scene 1	They're gotting engaged.
Scene 2	
Scene 3	
Scene 4	
Scene 5	

4 Look at the story of Harry and Daisy's relationship. Label each picture with a phrase or phrases from exercise 1.



Would you like to go two days later

one day in July

a week later

for six months



Speaking tip

Sorry!

(5)

When you're preparing for a speaking task, make a note of the words and expressions that you can use in your answers.

5 Read the speaking tip. Then answer the questions about the pictures.

Picture 1: Where were they? What were they doing?

Picture 3: Where were they?

Picture 4: What did Daisy do when she was angry?

Picture 6: What did Harry give Daisy?

6 SPEAKING Tell the story of Harry and Daisy's relationship. Use the pictures, your notes from exercise 5 and the time expressions in the box to help you.

Time expressions after a (few days) after that before finally first for (two months) in the end (two years) later the moment ... the same day

Vocabolary Builder 7.1: Three-part phrasal verbs: p. 13-

Look at the photo. What do you think is happening?



Modern life is becoming 1 _ _ (fast) and ? but at the same time, people are becoming 3_ (isolated). These days, people in their twenties and thirties are finding it 4_____ (difficult) to socialise and meet potential partners because they work harder and (small) social circles. They can go to bars and clubs, but for many, speed dating is a 4_____ (good) option because it allows them to meet a lot of people more quickly, and in a less stressful environment. This is how it works: an equal number of men and women meet at a café, get into pairs, and chat for three minutes; when a bell rings, you move round to the next person and chat for another three minutes; after three more minutes you move round again, and so on. At the end of the evening, you make a list of the people that you got on with the best and found the '__ _ . (attractive) - or the least unattractive! Then you give your list to the organisers, and if the people on it feel the same way about you, the organisers give you each other's contact details. It may not be a (romantic) as a traditional date, but for many, it's the 9_____ (easy) and 10_____ (sensible) choice.

- 2 Complete the text with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.
- 3 6 2.10 Listen and check your answers to exercise 2. Do you think speed dating sounds fun? Give reasons.
- Read the Learn this! box. Then match the words in red in the text with the explanations (1-5).
 - 1 a comparative form of an adjective with less.
 - 2 a superlative form of an adjective with least.
 - 3 a comparative form of an adverb with more,
 - 4 a comparative form of an adverb with -er.
 - 5 a superlative form of an irregular adverb.

_			1	
(OTTIC	sarat iwe	and cii	IDAFI STIVA	e adverbs
~~ III	MINCHA	0110 20	POLIGITA	e dutcipa

We usually form comparative and superlative adverbs with more and most. However, we add -er to some adverbs.

Please drive more slowly! Mum drives faster than dad.

less and least

Less is the opposite of mare, least is the opposite of mast. We can use them with adjectives and adverbs.

Who finished the exercise least quickly?

- 5 2.11 Listen to five people talking about their experiences of speed dating. Match the sentences (a-e) with the speakers (1-5).
 - a It was difficult at first but later I could chat more easily.
 - b It's the least enjoyable experience I've ever had.
 - c. It was less enjoyable than I expected.
 - d Time passed most quickly when I was talking to people I liked.
 - e It was less stressful than chatting somebody up in a bar.
- 6 Read the Learn this! box. Then find examples of points 1 and 2 in exercise 5.

Comparison

- 1 We can make comparisons with simple nouns (She's more confident than her brother.) and also with clauses (She's less talkative than she used to be.).
- 2 We often use a superlative with the present perfect and ever. He's the shyest person I've ever met.
- 7 Read sentence A. Then complete sentence B so that it means the same. Include the word in brackets.
 - A London isn't as crowded as Tokyo.
 - B London ______Tokyo, (less)
 - 2 A I've never met anyone nicer than Tom.
 - B Tom ______ ret. (the)
 - 3 A Kieran has got a louder voice than Phoebe.
 - **B** Kieran talks ______ Phoebe. (more)
 - 4 A This is the easiest question.
 - **B** This is ______ question. (difficult)
 - 5 A Roger is a faster worker than Dan.
 - B Roger ______ Dan. (quickly)
- SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions with most or least and the present perfect with ever. Use the prompts below and your own ideas.
 - 1 stressful exam / take
- 4 sensible person / meet
- 2 isolated place / visit
- 5 good choice / make
- 3 romantic film / see
- 6 long book / read

What's the most/least stressful exam you've ever taken?

Our science exam last month.

• Grammar Builder 7.1: Comparison: p. 119

- 1 How many poets can you name:
 - a from your own country?
 - b from other countries?
- 2.12 Listen to a radio documentary about the life of W B Yeats, a famous poet. Which of these things does the speaker talk about?

growing up relationships school travel writing

- 3 2.12 Listen again and choose the correct answers.
 - 1 Where did Yeats spend his childhood?
 - a in Ireland.
 - b In Ireland and England.
 - c in England.
 - 2 Where did he first hear Irish folk tales?
 - a At home.
- b in Dublic.
- c At school.
- 3 Maud Gonne was
 - a an English nationalist.
 - b a terrorist.
- c an Ir'sh nationalist.
- 4 Yeats asked Maud Gonne to marry him
 - a twice.
- b three times.
- c four times.
- 5 Which of Yeats' works are more romantic?
 - a His early poems.
 - b. His later poems.
- c His plays.
- 6 When did Yeats die?...
 - a in 1923.
- b In 1939.
- c In 1948.

4 Try to complete this famous poem by Yeats with the nouns in the box. Remember that poems often rhyme.

bars beauty book eyes face fire mountains sleep sorrows stars

- 5 \$\infty\$ 2,13 Listen and check your answers to exercise 4. Is it a romantic poem or a political poem?
- 6 Match each verse of the poem (1-3) with a summary (a-c).
 - a Remember that there were lots of people who loved you for your looks, but that I loved you for yourself. I especially loved you when you looked sad.
 - b As you bend down near the fire, say quietly to yourself how you lost my love. But though I was very sad, my love for you didn't die.
 - When you are an old woman, falling asleep by the fire, read the book which contains this poem and think about how beautiful you were when you were young.
- 7 SPEAKING Think of a famous poet from your own country. How much do you know about their life and works? Can you think of any similarities with W B Yeats?

They both wrote works with a political message.

When you are old When you are old and grey and full of 1______, And nodding by the 2______, take down this 3______ And slowly read, and dream of the soft look Your 3______ had once, and of their shadows deep; How many loved your moments of glad grace, And loved your 5______ with love false or true, But one man loved the pilgrim Soul in you, And loved the 6_____ of your changing 7_____; And bending down beside the glowing 6_____, Murmur, a little sadly, how Love fled And paced upon the 9_____ overhead And hid his face amid a crowd of 10_____.

I can talk about imaginary sisurtisms and things I would like to charge.

2.14 Listen to the conversation and choose the correct verb forms. Decide whether Max and Jade are:

a getting on well.

b falling out.

c making up.



I wish we 'can / could afford a holiday this year. Jade These beaches look amazing!

Max Yes, if only we 2have / had €3,000!

If I 3am / was rich, "we'd spend / we spent every winter together on a tropical island.

Max Realty? I'd rather go skiing in the Alps. Lying on a beach is boring.

Max! It 'wouldn't be / wasn't boring 'f you fare / were with me, I wish you'd be / you were more romantic sometimes!

Well anyway, we can't afford it. If you "didn't / Max wouldn't buy so many clothes, "we'd have / we had more money for holidays.

Jade But Hike clothes! Would you rather I 10 wear / wore a tracksuit all the time, like you?

What's wrong with my tracksuits?!

Read and complete the Learn this! box. How many examples of the second conditional are in the dialogue?

Second conditional

We use the second conditional to talk about an imaginary situation or event and its result. We use the _____ simple for the situation or event and ____ + base form for the result.

- Complete the sentences with your own ideas.
 - 1 If I had €3,000 for a holiday, ...
 - 2 If I had €1,000 for some new outfits, ...
 - 3 If I could live anywhere in the world, ...
 - 4 If I spoke perfect English, ...
 - 5 If I fancied my friend's boyfriend/girlfriend, ...
 - 6 If I lived on a tropical island, ...
 - 7 If I had a holiday home in the Alps, ...
 - 8 If I fell out with my best friend, ...

Read the Learn this! box. Underline an example of each expression in the dialogue in exercise 1.

I wish, If only, I'd rather

1 We use I wish ... or If only ... with the past simple to say that we really want a situation to be different. I wish it was the weekend. If only I had a car.

2 We use I wish ... or If only ... with would + base form to say that we really want somebody's (or something's) behaviour to be different. I wish you wouldn't shout. I wish this pen would work.

3 We use I'd rather with a base form to express a preference.

'Do you want a pizza?' 'I'd rather have a sandwich.'

4 We use Pd rather with the past simple to say that we really want somebody's (or something's) behaviour to be different. I'd rather you didn't keep interrupting.

5 Complete the sentences with I wish (or If only) and I'd rather.

1	. can't	afford	that jacke	it	was c	heaper!
---	---------	--------	------------	----	-------	---------

- 2 'don't like living in a flat. _____ live in a house.
- 3 I'd like to know how Jackie is, _____ she would phone.
- 4 I'm getting fat. _____ do some exercise than go on a diet.
- 5 You can wear jeans if you want, but ______ you wore something more formal.
- 6 _____ my brother wouldn't borrow my bike.
- 6 How many sentences can you make using this chart?

I wish she'd do better in her exams. If only she had a lob. I'd rather I didn't have to work. If she worked harder, stay in bed. She'd have more money if we lived in the USA. our parents wouldn't worry.

7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Student A: Make comments with I wish ... and the ideas in the box or your own ideas. Student B: Reply using Pd rather ... and your own ideas. Student A: Say how life would be different.

1 / live near the sea 1 / be 21 years old

1 / have a new mobile phone lessons / be longer

it / be Christmas 1 / can play the piano 1 / own a Ferrari

I wish I lived near the sea.

Really? I'd rather live in the mountains.

But if I lived near the sea, I could go to the beach every day in the summer.

Grammar Builder 7.3: I wish, if only, I'd rather: p. 121

READING Internet relationships

I can understand and react to a website article about Internsa relationships.

1 SPEAKING Discuss the questions with the class.

- 1 Can you fall in love with somebody without meeting them face to face?
- 2. In what ways can online relationships be dangerous?
- 3 Do you know anybody who has started a relationship online?

Reading tip

Find out what kind of text you're going to read and what type of information you may expect to find in it. This will help you understand the text better.

- 2 Read the reading tip. Then look quickly through the text and decide what type of text it is.
 - a a newspaper report
 - b an online article
 - c an informal letter
 - d a literary review
- 3 Read the text. Does the writer think Internet relationships have more advantages or disadvantages?
- 4 Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.
 - The writer's family are worried that she has too many friends.
 - A lot of people read the writer's articles online.
 - 3. The writer's online friends get angry with her it she is late.
 - 4 The writer thinks online relationships are less stressful than friends in the 'real' world.
 - 5. The writer hard y ever interacts with people in the 'real' world.
 - 6 The writer knows some of her online friends better than she knows her neighbours.
 - The writer thinks it is difficult to care about somebody you've never met face to face.
 - 8 The writer thinks the Internet allows you to get to know people more deeply.
- 5 Complete the definitions with the words and phrases from the text in the box.

an obligation close to your heart fulfilling interrupt judge nothing in common running in circles

- 1 If something is it is very important to you.
- 2 If something is ____, you have to do it.
- 3. If you are _____, you are too busy to think.
- 4. If something is _____, it is very satisfying.
- 5 If you have with somebody, you do not share any interests or opinions.
- 6 If you _____ somebody, you speak while they are speaking.
- 7 If you _____ somebody, you decide what somebody is like, whether you like them, etc.



Are Online Relations

by Linda Johnson

Well, this is a topic that is **closed to provide at.** My family and friends are always worrying about me because more and more of my life exists online. They keep teling mell should get out more. They say I need a life. I tell them I HAVE a life, it's just different from theirs!

What do they have that adon't? Well, let's explore that question.

They have lots of visitors to their homes. But fewer than I do. Every time I write an article for my website, I'm talking to thousands of people. (The difference is, I don't have to clean my house after my visitors have left.)

They have relationships that require a lot of time and effort. Not me, have many more friends than they do, but mine don't intercopt me when I'm talking. Mine con't care what I look like. Mine con't judge me by anything other than how I troat them. And mine don't fall out with me if I'm late.

They have poligations that keep them running in circles ... this appointment, that date, this arrangement, that party. Not me. I just sit at my computer with a not cup of coffee and relax.

Lagree that we all need some kind of human interaction and we can't do all our communicating through a keyboard. I have a job that requires that light out of the house and interact in the real world. But is this the most world part of my life? Not at all Most of my most furfilling experiences recently have been with people know through the Internet.

For example, I work regularly with a team of computer experts who write articles for this website. I've never even seen most of those people, but they feel like true friends to me: friends that like all over the world, friends that I wouldn't know if it weren't for the Internet. True, I would love to meet them in real life. But, even if I don't, these people remain very real and dear to me. Because I really KNOW them. I certainly know them petter than the guy what lives next door to me and with whom I have the think in common.

So, my answer to the question 'Are internet relationships real?' is a resounding YES, YES, YES. And don't let your families and 'real' friends convince you differently. Just because you can't 'see someone, doesn't mean you can't care about them. The internet allows you the opportunity to know someone for who they are and not for how they look or how they dress. In some ways, the people you know on the internet are more real than the ones you pass on the street.



- SPEAKING Read the comments about Internet relationships. Is each one an advantage or disadvantage?
 - 1 Nobody can judge you by the clothes you wear.
 - 2 You can say things that you'd be too shy to say face to face.
 - 3 You can't be sure if the other person is telling the truth about their sex, age or appearance.
 - 4 You can 'meet' your friend without leaving the house.
 - 5 You can have friends all over the world.
 - 6 You can't see each other's faces when you're chatting online.
- 7 Complete the song with the base form or past simple of the verbs in the box.

ask be care care dance hide hold hold laugh love run save see stand touch

- 8 2.35 Listen to the song and check your answers to exercise 7.
- 9 Choose the best ending for the summary of the song.
 I love you a lot, but ...
 - a you don't love me.
 - b I don't know how to tell you my feelings.
 - c you're with somebody else.
 - d how much do you love me?
 - e we're a long way apart from each other.

10 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Think of songs (in English or your own language) which match the other summaries in exercise 9. Compare your answers with the class.

Hero

Would you * If I * you to dance? Would you * and never look back? Would you cry if you * me crying? And would you * my soul tonight?
Would you tremble if I * your lips? Would you ? ? Oh please tell me this. Now would you die for the one you *? Hold me in your arms tonight.
[chorus]
Ti can be your hero, baby. I can kiss away the pain. I will by you forever. You can take my breath away.
Would you swear that you'll always " mine? Or would you lie? Would you run and " ? Am I in too deep? Have I lost my mind? I don't "2 You're here tonight.
[chorus]
* Oh, I just want to * you. I just want to * you. Oh yeah. Am I in too deep? Have I lost my mind? Well, I don't * You're here tonight.

I can introduce myself to someone and find out more stouch them.



Connor Excuse me. You're Ben Wilson's sister, aren't you?

Tanya Yes, I am. My name's Tanya.

Connor Pleased to meet you, Tanya. I'm Connor.

Tanya Hi Connor. How do you know Ben?
Connor We sometimes play volleyball together.
Tanya Oh, right. Are you really into sport?

Connor Yes, I am. What about you? Have you got any

hobbies?

Tanya Not really. I like watching TV - and DVDs.

Connor What kind of films do you like?

Tanya Anything, really. Comedies, thrillers, horror films.

Connor I like films too. There are some good films on at

the cinema now, aren't there?

Tanya Yes, I think so.

Connor Maybe we could go to the cinema some time.

Tanya Yes, good idea.

Connor Anyway, I'd better get back to my friends. Nice

talking to you.

Tanya And you. See you around.

- 1 Q 2.16 Read and listen to the dialogue. Answer the questions.
 - 1 What is the social connection between Conner and Tanya?
 - Z What hobby do they share?
 - 3 Why does Connor end the conversation?
- 2 Read the Learn this! box. Find two question tags in the dialogue in exercise 1.

Question tags

1 We use question tags when we want somebody to confirm what we are saying. A statement with a question tag often sounds more polite than a direct question or a plain statement.

You live near the station, don't you?

2 We use auxiliary verbs (do, have, would, etc.) or the verb be in question tags. When the main verb is affirmative the question tag is negative, and vice versa.

You passed your exams, didn't you? You weren't at Jake's party, were you?

Grammar Builder 7.4: Question tags: p. 121

3 Add question tags to the statements.

- I've met your friend before.
 I've met your friend before, haven til?
- 2 You came to my party.
- 3 You're the girl who works in the supermarket,
- 4. You used to be at my school.
- 5 You were at the concert last weekend.

4 Q 2.17 Listen to three dialogues. Which pair get on best?

- 1 Ben and Sue
- 2 Ed and lo
- 3 Mat and Zoe
- 5 Q 2.17 Listen again. Complete the sentences from the dialogues. They aren't in the order that you hear them!
 - 1 So _____ me more about your band.
 - 2 I saw you at Rebecca's party, ______ !?
 - 3 Well, I'm ______ I'll see you around.
 - 4 I'm sure we'll _____ into each other again.
 - 5 We've met ______ before, haven't we?
 - 6 What _____ do you like doing at weekends?
 - 7 You were at the gig last week, _____ you?
 - 8 _____, it's time I got back to work.
- 6 Put the phrases in red in exercise 5 into the correct groups (a-c). Then find one or two more phrases for each group in the dialogue in exercise 1.
 - a Phrases for initiating a conversation.
 - **b** Phrases for sustaining a conversation
 - c Phrases for ending a conversation

7 Work in pairs. Invent two characters and decide:

- 1 where they are meeting.
- 2 what the social connection is between them (a friend of a friend, a classmate's brother, etc.).
- 3 what hobbies they each have.
- 8 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue using your notes from exercise 7 and the chart below. Remember to use phrases from exercise 6.

A tista th

Initiate the conversation.

B

Reply. Introduce yourself.

Introduce yourself.

-

Ask about A's hobbies.

Reply. Ask about B's hobbies.

4

Reply. Sustain the conversation.

Reply.

-

Make a suggestion or invitation.

Accept or decline.

End the conversation.

9 SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class.



An informal letter: reply to an invitation

1	Complete the invitations with two of the special occasions
	from the box.

21st birthday christening Christmas confirmation engagement Halloween May Day New Year's Evolvalentine's Day wedding

_		_	
	Da"	1.70	IF

We're having a 1______ party or Saturday, 14 Hebruary and would be delighted fiyou could bin us. The party starts at 8.50. There will be food, so please con't est defore you come! Hops you can make it.

Steve

Dear Megan

Please come to my fancy dress 4 _____ - party on Saturday.
3) October, from 8.00 until late at 97 Morton Lane. There will be a prize for the scariest costume, so you'd better start thinking about your outfit now!

Hope to see you there. Please bring a bottle.

Love

Dear

Hermah

Read the letter below. Which invitation in exercise 1 does the writer reply to? Complete the first and last lines with the names.

I hope you are well. Thank you so much for your
invitation. It sounds like it's going to be a great party;
and I wish I could come, but I in atraid I nom'T be
able to make it. I'm going on holiday with my tamily
the next morning. Our flight leaves at seven occock in
the morning, so I'll need to get a really early night!
We're going to Egypt for some winter sun - I'm really
looking forward to it!
I'm sorry I haven't been in touch recently. This year
at school is really hard. We have exams almost every
week, and I don't go out much even at the weekend.
I wish weekends were longer! If I had more free time,
I'd be able to see all my friends. Are you working hard
too?
I'll give you a call when I'm back from holiday. Maybe
we could go to the cinema one evening, or a music venue
- there are usually some good gigs in the winter. I'll
meed comething to theer me up!
need something to cheer me up!
Anyway, that's all from me. Thanks again for the
invitation and sorry I won't be there. Please take
plenty of unotos - I'd love to see them. I'm stare there
will be some great outfits. Do you remember Lucy's witch
contains from last year?

3	In which	paragraph	of the	letter	does t	he writer:
---	----------	-----------	--------	--------	--------	------------

- 1 suggest meeting up?
- 2 decline the invitation?
- 3 mention a previous party?
- 4 give a reason for not going to the party?
- 5 talk about school?
- 6 make a request?
- Underline all the examples of in, at and on with time expressions in the texts in exercises 1 and 2. Then choose the correct prepositions in the Learn this! box.

in.	at a	nd	on	with	time

- 1 We use in / at / on with
- a clock times (sever o'clock, 8.30, etc.)
- **b** festivals and holicays (Christmas, Easter, etc.)
- c the weekend, night
- 2 We use in / at / on with
- a parts of the day (the morning, the afternoon, etc.)
- b seasons (summer, winter, etc.)
- c months (January, February, etc.).
- d years (2005, 1492, etc.)
- 3 We use in / at / on with
- a days of the week (Munday, Tuescay, etc.).
- b dates (12 May, 1 April, etc.)

Complete the sentences with in, at or on.

- Americans often have a family party ____ Thanksgiving, which is ____ November.
- 2 His last party started nine o'clock the evening Saturday and finished midday Sunday!
- 3 ____ the weekend, we usually have lunch ___ two o'clock ___ the afternoon.
- 4 They last went to a party ___ Christmas 2001,
- 5 She was born ____ 14 September 1973 and got married ____ July 2001. She got divorced ____ 2004.

Grammar Builder 7.5: in, ot and on with time: p. 122

6 Imagine that you have received the other invitation from exercise 1. Write an informal letter to the sender using the following plan:

Dear	

Paragraph 1: Decline the invitation and explain why you will not be able to make it.

Paragraph 2: Say what you have been doing recently.

Paragraph 3: Suggest meeting up after the party. Include ideas for an activity.

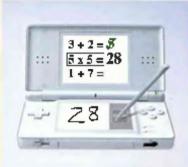
Paragraph 4: Finish by returning to the topic of the party.

Love _____

Get ready for your EXAM 7

Describe the photos. Do you know what kind of game this is? What health benefits is it supposed to have for the player?





Page 10 of the Listening exam task.

LISTENING exam task

Listen to part of a radio programme. Complete each sentence with one word only.

- 1 Scientists have often argued that computer games can have a negative offect on people's ______.
- 2 An addiction to computer games often means that young people spend less time doing ________.
- 3 The makers of this new kind of game claim that the brain needs _______, just like the body.
- 4 The games include a lot of different ______
- 5 The makers claim that the games can permanently improve your concentration and _______.
- 6 The games are advertised by well-known ______
- 7 Most research into the games' effectiveness is paid for by the ______.
- 8 Even if the games do not improve your brain, they at least allow you to have _______.
- 3 Read the definition. Why do you think some people are worried about GM food?

genetically modified adj. (abbr. **GM**) (of a plant, etc.) having had its genetic structure changed artificially, so that it will produce more fruit or not be affected by disease: genetically modified foods (= made from plants that have been changed in this way)

4 Do the Use of English exam task,

USE OF ENGLISH exam task

Complete gaps 1–10 in the text with a suitable word. There is an example (0).

Can GM food be good for your health?

It looks just " 182 an ordinary carrot, it tastes the ' too, but the 'supercarrot' is in fact the result of years of

scientific work. And the scientists who developed it claim that it is much healthier 2_____ a normal carrot because it has been genetically modified to contain high levels of calcium. Calcium is a necessary part of a healthy diet and is mostly found in high-fat foods 2_____ cheese. Supercarrots offer the chance to get plenty of calcium without eating too 4____ fat.

GM (generically modified) food is a controversial tupic, and many people claim that `_____ is unnatural and even dangerous. Environmental groups often campaign against GM foods and `_____ scientists who are developing them. But it `____ worth remembering that GM food could perhaps bring major health benefits. In addition `____ supercarrots`, scientists are also working on a new kind of ponato which makes much healthier chips and crisps. This could cause a big reduction in rates of obesity and heart diverse.

Probably the most significant new GM food is 'golden rice', "______ contains a for of Vitamin A. At present, more than a million people, mostly women and children, die every year in poorer regions of Africa and South East Asia, and 500,000 go blind, because they do not get enough vitamin A. "______ farmers in these regions grew 'golden rice' instead of ordinary rice, the effect on people's health would be dramatic.

5 Look at the pictures in the exam task below, Match the adjectives in the box with one or both of them.

challenging elegant exhausting heavy muscular painful relaxed supple strong sweaty

6 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Compare and contrast the two photos. Answer the questions.





- 1 What would be the health benefits of each activity, in your opinion?
- 2 What kind of person would be best suited to each activity, in your opinion?
- 3 Overall, which activity would be better for your health, do you think?
- 4 Which activity would you personally enjoy more? Give reasons.

Get ready for your EXAM 8

Get ready to READ Who are these people in the photos? What do you know about them? Use the words in the box.

fall in love get divorced get married have children





- 2 Match the couples, Which of them are fictional?
 - 1 Bonnie
 - 2 Cleopatra
 - 3 John Lennon

 - 4 Kurt Cobain
 - 5 Napoleon Bonaparte
 - 6 Romeo

- a Antony
- b Clyde
- c Courtney Love
- d Josephine
- e luliet
- f Yoko Ono.
- 3 Do the Reading exam task.

READING exam task

Read the texts. Match the famous couples (A-C) to the questions 1-7. There is only one correct answer for each question.

A Victoria and Albert

In 1837 the 18-year-old Princess Victoria became the Queen of England. Three years later she married Albert, her first cousin from Germany, who was also 21. She was a cheerful girl and he was an honest, intelligent man, and throughout their marriage they were deeply in love. As Victoria was the queen, Albert was not officially a king, but they were both highly respected and Victoria relied on Albert's advice, especially regarding diplomatic matters. Yet his main devotion was or their lamily and their nine children, Albert died 40 years before Victoria, and devastated by the loss of her beloved prince, she never wore anything our black from then on,

Edward VIII and Wallis Simpson

In 1930, Edward, the heir to the British throne, met Wallis Simpson, a married American woman a little younger than himself. Six years later he became King of England, and after she divorced her second husband. later that year, they were free to marry. The problem was that his family and royal officials did not want to accept her as the Queen of England because she was owarced, And so, in order to make her his wrife, Edward abdicated, it was a controversial love affair and Mrs Simpson. was never liked by her husband's family. They spent most of their lives abroad, where they both died - Edward in 1972 and his wife in 1986.

C Tristan and Isolde

There are many versions of this myth but all agree on the essential details of this story of star-crossed lovers. Tristan was a knight sent to bring Isolde to his king, who she was supposed to marry. But before they reached the king's court. Tristan and Isolde fell in love. The lovers had an affair but in the end separated. She married the king and he another girl. Yet, when he was dying from a poisoned wound, Tristan sent for Isolde, However, Tristan's wife lied to him telling him that Isolde wasn't coming. This news killed him, When Isolde arrived and found him dead, she died of a broken heart.

Which love story

- 1 involves two people from different continents? 2 involves a woman who found her nusband's advice vety valuable? 3 involves both people dying around the same time? 4 concerns fictional characters? 5 talks about a woman who had more than one husband? 6 involves people of the same age? 7 did not end in marriage?
- 4 Get ready to SPEAK Which place in the box would you choose for a first date with somebody you did not know very well? Why?

café disco museum park

5 Work in pairs. What forms of evening entertainment are usually available in a big city? Which would you find most enjoyable? Think about different types of:

clubs music dance sport theatre

6 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Work in pairs. Imagine you are going out for the evening. Look at the adverts from a magazine and agree where you would like to go.

MUSIC

• The Killjoys

Heavy metal band

Live gig starts 8.30 p.m. at the Town Hall Tickets: £10 in advance, £12 on the door

DJ Sheriff

Clubinight at The Venue 9 p.m. - 2 a.m. Dance and hip-hop tracks from the 90s until now

Entrance 55 before 11 p.m., £10 after 11 p.m.

Bartók String Quartets

Performed by the Bergray a Quartet Concert starts 7.30 p.m. at the Chamber Music Rooms Tickets: £15 and £20 (students £5).

DANCE

SPORT

NBA in the US

Fickets from £8-£35

Street Life'

Contemporary dance performance Original soundtrack Performance starts 7,30 p.m. at the Modern Arts Theatre Tickets E8

The Bulls vs The Nicks

Touring basketball legends from the

Match starts 7 p.m. at the Blair Arena

Travel

Getting from A to B

THIS UNIT INCLUDES ...

Vocabulary • travel and transport • travel and transport adjectives

holidays, trips and excursions * lourism and travel * verbs + prepositions

Grammar = the passive = indefinite pronouns: some-, ony-, no-

indirect questions • introductory it

Speaking • discussing different modes of travel • planning an ideal holiday

exchanging information

Writing . a postcard

I sen taik about travel.

1 Look at the photos. What is happening? What are the people thinking and feeling?







- 2 \$\infty\$ 2.19 Read and listen to Melanie's story. Match the photos with paragraphs (A-C).
- A Our plane landed at Heathrow Airport. [] We had been away for months and were now returning home for Mum's birthday. We went through passport control, and collected our rucksacks. After backpacking round the world, this was the easy part or so we thought. Whis were pushing our trolleys through customs, when a customs officer stopped us [] and spent ages searching through our luggage. Permust have thought that we were carrying drugs.
- B We needed to get to London to catch the last train to Cambridge. We went down to the Underground, bought a ticket ³ and found out which train to get. The **platform** was unbelievably crowded, but we managed to push our way onto the train. Halfway through the journey the train suddenly stopped. Then a voice announced that there was a problem with the **track** and we would have to get off. ⁴
- C We climbed down from the **carriage** and were directed outside. ⁵ We decided to get a taxi to the station instead. A **cab** pulled up and we got in gratefully. ⁶ It drove quickly through the streets but then came to a sudden halt. Not again! There was a terrible **traffic jam**. The taxi driver suggested that it would be quicker to walk. ⁷ We got out and started running to the station. We got to the train just as the guard was blowing his whistle, and jumped on. It was the wrong train! ⁸ We ended up having to **change** at Stevenage ⁹ and didn't get home until 1.30 a.m.

- 3 Complete the definitions with the correct form of the words in red in exercise 2.
 - 1 To _ _ _ means to get off one train and onto another.
 - 2 A ______ is a bag that you carry on your back.
 - 3 A ______ is where you stand when you are waiting for a train at the station.
 - 4 A _____ is a long line of cars that isn't moving.
 - 5 To _____ means to come down from the sky onto the ground.
 - 6 _____ , means all the suitcases and bags that you take with you on a journey.
 - 7 A _____ is a section of a train for passengers.
 - 8 ______ is the place where they can check your bags for illegal goods as you enter a country.
 - 9 ______ is the place where they check your travel documents as you leave or enter a country.
 - 10 _____ means travelling around with your bag on your back, usually staying at cheap places.
 - 11 A. .___ .is a cart with wheels for carrying heavy bags.
 - 12 A ______ is the set of metal rails that a train runs along.
 - 13 _____ is another word for taxi.
- 4 2.20 Listen to eight announcements and dialogues. Write the number of the announcement or dialogue in the box at the point in the story when you think it happened. There is one box that you do not need.
 - Vocabulary Builder 8.1: Travel and transport: p. 135
- 5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Brainstorm the advantages and disadvantages of travelling by bicycle, car, train, bus, plane and ship. Use the adjectives in the box to help you.

Useful adjectives cheap - expensive comfortable - uncomfortable fast - slow dangerous - safe reliable - unreliable relaxing - stressful convenient - inconvenient

Travelling by bus is slower than travelling by train.

That's true, but travelling by bus is cheaper.

When you travel by train, you can see more on the journey.

6 SPEAKING Discuss your ideas with the class.



- Read the text and answer the questions.
 - 1 Where was the first car built?
 - 2. Who was the first person to travel more than 100. kilometres in a car?
 - 3. In which country were cars first produced in large numbers in factories?



The first motor car was built by Kurl Benz in Germany in 1885. The first petral engine had been designed some years earlier, but Benz was the first to fit it successfully in a vehicle that he could mass produce. On 5 August 1888, his wife Bertha drove the car for 106 kilometres, proving that the car could travel long distances. Today, Bertha Benz's famous drive is celebrated as a national holiday every year in Germany. However, it was in America that cars were first produced in large numbers in factories. Henry Ford founded the Ford Motor Company in 1903. and since then over a billion cars have been manufactured. by companies all over the world. Now, over a hundred years later, over 63 million curs are built every year. Many environmentalists believe we should replace cars with greener means of transport, but motor companies are confident that cleaner engines will be developed.

Complete the table with the examples of the passive in blue. in the text.

The passive		
present simple		
past simple		
present perfect		
past perfect		
future with will		

- When we use the passive, which word do we use if we want to say who (or what) performed the action? Find two examples in the text.
 - Scommar Suffer Will The passe ver p. 102

- Make the sentences passive. Use by where necessary.
 - 1 Karl Benz built the first motor car in 1885. The free inster can was built by Karl Berg in 1869.
 - 2 Engineering works have caused a lot of cetays.
 - They'll probably search your bags at customs.
 - 4 The guard had already directed us to platform 4.
 - A lot of commuters use this train.
 - 6 They've recently increased the price of rail tickets.
 - Somebody left this bag on the plane.
- 5 Complete the text with the passive form of the verbs in brackets. Add by where necessary.

For some years I have been afflicted with the belief that fliant is possible to mon." Wilbur Wright



Today, 17 December 1903 (remember) as the day when
the first powered flight ' (make) two brothers. Wilbur and
Orville Wright. The plane 3 (make) of wood and
(power) a small petrol engine. It 5 (control) the
pilo; who pulled strings that changed the angle of the wings, By the
time the aircraft took to the air, the engine and propeller 5
(test) thoroughly in their workshop. The (lights 7 (witness)
five people and a photograph 8 (take) of the first flight. The
events (report) in the press on the next day and the brothers
became celebrities overnight. Since that day, flying 10 (become)
an everyday form of transport, but it all began with the ingenuity of
the Wright brothers.

- SPEAKING Complete the sentences. Use a passive form of the verbs in brackets. Then, in pairs, decide on the correct answers.
 - 1 The train ___ _ (invent) in Britain in
 - a 1729.
- b 1879.
- 2 In 2000 the Channel Tunnel
- (open) between
- England and France.
- b England and Ireland.
- c England and Wales.

- The Trans-Siberian Railway ____ 💻 (linish) in b 1916.
 - a 1866.
- c 1966.
- 4. The first motorway in the world _____ (build) between the two cities of
 - al Cologne and Bonn in Germany.
 - b New York and Washington in the USA.
 - c London and Edinburgh in the UK.
- 5 Dacia cars _____ (make) in.
 - a Hungary.
- b Italy.
- c Romania.
- 2.21 Listen and check your answers to exercise 6.



The British on holiday

In the nineteenth century, railways were built from the big industrial cities like Leeds and Manchester to seaside towns like Blackpool and Scarborough. For the first time, ordinary working people could visit the seaside. They used to take day-trips on

- 5 Sundays and special days like Easter. Tracitionally, people sat in deckchairs on the beach, swam in the sea, and ate fish and chips. Children could watch *Punch and Judy* puppet shows, build sandcastles and ride donkeys on the beach.
- In the 1950s, the first package holidays were launched, Throughout to the 60s and 70s, the British increasingly began to abandon the traditional seasice holiday in favour of sunshine and warmer seas in countries like Spain and Greece. Carevan and camping holidays also became popular in the 60s and 70s as car ownership increased.
- 15 In the 1990s, budget airlines like easyJet slashed the cost of air tickets to many European destinations. Long-haul flights also came down in price, so holidays to exotic destinations in Australia and Asia became affordable to ordinary families. A growing number of people began to book their own flights and accommodation and, as a result, the package holiday market declined.

The holiday habits of the British are continuing to change.

Increasing levels of affluence mean that, for many families, a second foreign holiday – often a winter skiing holiday – is possible.

City breaks are also growing in popularity, and not only to nearby

25 destinations - Las Vegas. Oubai and Cape Town are all favourites for long weekends. And independent travel is becoming more and more popular as the Internet allows holidaymakers to find the best deals or line.

Top 10 holiday destinations for UK holiday-makers

1 Spain 25%

6 Greece 5%

2 France 20%

• 0,0000 570

A LICA PRI

7 Germany 4%

3 USA 7%

8 The Netherlands 3.5%

4 Eire 7%

9 Portugal 3,5%

5 Italy 6%

10 Belgium 3%

- 1 Describe the photos. What are the people doing? Where do you think they might be?
- Read the text. Are the sentences true or false?
 - 1 In the nineteenth century, new railways made it possible for working people to go to the coast.
 - 2 In the nineteenth century, people used to have long holidays at the seaside.
 - 3 Traditionally, water sports were the most popular holiday activity.
 - 4 A lot of British people bought cars between 1960 and 1979.
 - 5 As package holidays became more popular, seaside holidays in Britain became less popular,
 - 6 In the 1990s, short flights were cheap, but long flights were still very expensive.
 - 7 Short holidays in distant places are becoming more popular.
 - 8 Most Britons have their holidays outside Europo.
- 3 Read the list of trips and excursions. Which ones are mentioned in the text?

Hotidays, trips and excursions—activity holiday camping holiday—caravan holiday—city break coach tour—cruise—day-trip—excursion package holiday—round-the-world trip—safari

- 4 Explain the phrases from the text in your own words.
 - 1 seasice towns

5 exotic destinations

2 budget air.ines

6 long weekends

3 slashed the cost

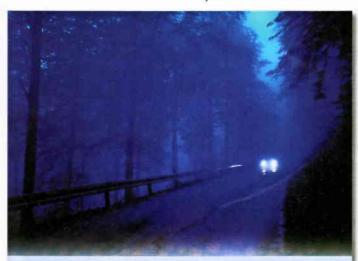
7 the best deals

4 long-haul flights

- Vocabulary Builder 8.2: Tourism and travel: p. 135
- 5 2.22 Listen to people talking about holidays. Which countries do they mention?
- 6 2.22 Listen again. Match the opinions with the people: Tony, Karen, Dan and Jill, and Chris.
 - 1 ______ discovered a new type of holiday and now go away every year in the winter.
 - 2 ____ doesn't like his/her home city in warm weather, but wouldn't like to be in the countryside in the winter,
 - 3 ______ got fed up with family holidays abroad and now goes on activity holidays.
 - 4 ______travels around and goes to a variety of places.
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.
 - What are popular holiday destinations in your country? Why do people go to these places?
 - 2 Do people from your country go on holiday abroad? What destinations are popular?

Indefinite pronouns: some-, any-, no-

- Read the text, Are the sentences true or false?
 - Sharon gave the young woman a lift to a pub.
 - Sharon didn't notice anything unusual about the woman.
 - 3 The young woman disappeared inside the pub.
 - 4 Sharon showed the woman's lipstick to the barman.



It was about 10 o'clock on a cold winter's night and Sharon Walters was driving home. Suddenly, she saw somebody standing at the side of the road, trying to hitch a ride. It was a young woman, about 20 years old, with a pale face and old-fashioned clothes. Sharon stopped the car, and said to the girl, 'Can I give you a lift somewhere?'

'Yes, I'm meeting somebody in a pub up the road.'

'OK. Jump in,' said Sharon. There wasn't anything unusual about the girl except for her old-fashioned clothes. When they arrived at the pub, the girl thanked Sharon, got out of the car and went into the pub. Suddenly, Sharon noticed that the girl had left something in the car – it was her lipstick. She went into the pub but she couldn't find the woman anywhere. 'Did you see anybody come into the pub a couple of minutes ago?' she asked the barman. 'Nobody's come in here for the past fifteen minutes,' he replied, 'except you.'

But I've just given her a lift here. She left her lipstick in the car.' Sharon put her hand in her pocket to take out the lipstick, but there was nothing there.

'Was she wearing old-fashioned clothes?' asked the barman.

'Yes. So you did see her!'

'I didn't see anybody, but I know this: a young woman was killed in a road accident near here about 30 years ago. She was on her way to this pub to meet her boyfriend ... Ask anybody round here — they all know about her.'

2 Look at the examples of indefinite pronouns in red in the text. Complete the table.

Indefinite pronouns						
somebody /someone	anybody/anyone	1/no-one				
something	?	3				
4	5	nowhere				

3 Study the examples of indefinite pronouns in red in the text. Then complete the rules with affirmative, negative and interrogative in the Learn this! box.

-	1	We use pronouns with same- in sentences
蓋		and in offers and requests.
Z	2	We use pronouns with any- in and
EARN		sentences.
3	3	We can also use pronouns with ony- in affirmative
		sentences when we mean it doesn't motier who/
z.		what/where
	4	We use pronouns with no- with verbs as the
		meaning is already negative.

- 4 Choose the correct words.
 - 1 It's dark. I can't see anything / something.
 - 2 There was no-one / anyone else on the train.
 - 3 He's smiling. He must be thinking about anything / something funry.
 - 4 "I can't find my ticket. It's somewhere / nowhere to be seen."
 "It must be anywhere / somewhere."
 - 5 You can get online anywhere / nowhere in the airport.
 - 6 Does anybody / nobody mind if I smoke?
 - 7 I'm really hungry. I've had anything / nothing to eat.

Grammar Builder 8.2: Indefinite pronouns: p. 123

5	Com	Complete the dialogue with indefinite pronouns.				
	Joe	I'm going out to get 1 to eat. There's 2 in the				
		Fridge.				
	Tina	Who are you going with?				
	loe	d Program on sty own				

Joe '______. I'm going on my own.

Tina Where are you going?

Joe I don't know. '_____. It doesn't matter.

To a second transmitted to the second transmitted transmitted to the second transmitted tran

Tina You're behaving very strangely. Is 5 ___ wrong?

Joe No, I just don't want to talk to 6 ___ right now.

6 Complete the questions with indefinite pronouns.

- 1 If you could visit _____ in the world, where would you go?
 2 Do you think the world would be better or worse if ____ every travelled by plane?
- 3 Would you prefer to live ______ very hot or ______ very cold?
- 4 Do you think _____ will ever travel backwards or forwards in time?
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 6. Give reasons for your answers.

READING Trip of a lifetime



since I watched a BBC wildlife documentary about them. I like the fact that they're so independent. The females are the boss, basically - they hunt alone, and they're stealthy 5 and strong. The markings are beautiful. The South Luangwa Valley in Zambia has one leopard for every kilometre, and seeing them. I think the fact they are nocturnal and hard to find makes it more exciting. Dad doesn't agree. He's already to worrying about not seeing one, but that's just my dad. Mfuwe international airport is the smallest I have ever seen. There is a tiny shop selling postcards and that's it. We pay for our postcards and climb into a jeep which takes us to Nkwali, trandling past mud buts and groups of children

I've always dreamed of seeing a leopard face to face ever

is wearing school uniform or carrying farm tools - sometimes both. Finally, we arrive at the camp - six buts and a bar built round a tree. Our hut has lizard wallpaper - except it's not wallpaper, it's just lizards. I go to sleep and dream about leopards.

20 On the first game drive, Rocky is out guide. Straight away, we're driving across a plain full of impala and baboons. Now comes the big moment of the first night. We hear something in the trees, and suddenly we are right in the middle of a lion



either side, and one tearing after an impala. They miss the kill, but even so, my heart is thumping,

The next morning, we go on a drive and spot baboons crossing the road. Suddenly, a trunk appears from the bush 30 and three elephants, including a baby, stroll across right in front of us.

That's how it is on the drives: a new creature every time. We get giraffes, then a crocodile, then a buffalo. But my favourite morning is the walking safari. We set off across the plain with 35 an armed guard. Rocky tells us The Golden Rule: 'Never run ... unless I say so. And if I say get up the tree, get up the tree." The next morning, two other guests boast about having seen a leopard and her cub. We look at pictures on their digital camera. I'm really cross, because there probably won't be you can do night drives there, which adds to your chances of 40 another sighting for ages, and tonight is our last night here. But I'm still hoping for a lucky break.

> This time, we're out with Zebron, but after just a few minutes, our jeep gets stuck on a muddy trail. It takes ages to dig us out, and my heart is sinking. Then it starts pouring. We sit in 45 the dark while my dad complains about the rain. And then, suddenly, two impala hurtle from the bushes.

> Moments later, the leopardess springs out behind us. We all sit in absolute silence and state at her. Leopards are much stronger than lions, and she looks incredibly powerful. After 50 giving us a long show, she darts back into the bush. Awesome.

We're soaked through, but I don't care about that. Mum and I sing and dance

as we head for camp: 'We saw a 55 leopard, we got a picture



- Describe the photos. Answer the questions.
 - 1 What animals can you see?
 - 2 What are the people doing?
 - 3 What kind of holiday is it?
 - 4 Would you like to go on this kind of holiday? Why?/Why not?
- Read the text quickly. Are the verbs in the past, present or future? Complete the reading tip.

Reading tip	
We sometimes use	tenses to
tell a story. This makes the story sound more ex	citing and
Immediate.	

Read the text. Put the events in the correct order.				
 Daisy got very close to some elephants. 				
The jeep got stuck in the mud.				
Daisy saw baboons.				
The plane landed in Mfuwe.				
Daisy saw some tions.				
Two other guests saw a leopardess and her cub.				
Γ.	Daisy saw a leopard.			
	Rea			

- 4 Choose the best answers.
 - 1 Daisy first got interested in leopards

They travelled by jeep to their camp.

- a when she had a dream about them.
- b when she saw a TV programme about them.
- c because they live alone.
- d because she once saw one face to face.
- 2 South Luangwa valley is a good place to look for leopards. because
 - a there are a lot of leopards there and you can look for them at night,
 - b there are more leopards there than anywhere else in Africa.
 - clit's easy to find leopards at night.
 - d it's exciting looking for leopards at night.
- Daisy's hut at the camp is
 - a built around the tree.
 - b full of lizards.
 - c covered in Strange wallpaper.
 - d made of mud.
- 4 Their first excursion is
 - a exciting because they see lions hunting.
 - b Inghtening because it is very dark.
 - cl exciting because the babdons make a lot of noise.
 - d sad because they see lions killing an impola.
- Rocky's Golden Rule for the walking safari basically means a never run if an animal is chasing you.
 - **b** if an animal chases you, climb a tree.
 - c don't climb a tree unless I tell you to.
 - d always do exactly what I say.

- 6. How does Daisy feel when she hears that two other guests have seen leopards?
 - a She feels sad because she wasn't with them.
 - b She feels angry because it means she probably won't see any leopards herself.
 - c She feels pleased that somebody has seen leopards.
 - d She feels hopeful because it means that there are leopards in the area.
- 7. When Daisy finally sees a leopard, it
 - a stays nearby for a while and then disappears suddenty.
 - b runs quickly behind them and disappears into the bush.
 - c walks close to them, but leaves before they can take a photo.
 - distays close until somebody shouts, then it runs away.
- 5 Match the movement verbs highlighted in the text with the definitions below.
 - to walk slowly and calmity.
 - 3 to move slowly on wheels:
 - 2 to move very quickly (3 verbs) 4 to jump

Verbs + prepositions

EARN THIS!

1 Same verbs are often followed by certain prepositions.

Let's listen to some music. She smiled at her mother.

- 2 in questions, we often put the preposition at the end. What are you waiting for?
- 6 Read the Learn this! box. Then find the verbs in the box in the text and underline them and the prepositions which follow them. Which verb appears twice, with two different prepositions? How are the meanings different?

dream worry pay arrive listen boast look hope complain stare care head

- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Complete the questions with the correct prepositions. Then ask and answer the questions,
 - Before the holiday, what does Daisy's dad worry.
 - 2 Before leaving the airport, what do they pay _ _ ?
 - 3 Just before seeing the lions, what do they lister _ _ ?
 - 4 What do two other guests boast ____?
 - 5 On the last night, what does Daisy's dad complain _____?
 - 6 After seeing the leoparcess, where do they head _____?

Pacabulary Builder B.3: Verbs + prepositions; p. 135

- 8 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Plan your ideal holiday. Make notes about:
 - 1 What kind of holiday would it be? (see page 76, exercise 3)
 - 2 Where would you like to go?
 - 3 How would you get there?
 - 4 What type of accommodation would you stay in?
 - 5 What would you do on heliday?
- 9 SPEAKING Present your ideas to the class.

At the airport: exchanging information



Immigra	tion officer Good morning, sir.
Jack Wils	son Good morning.
Officer	May I see your passport, please?
-	Yes, certainly.
Officer	Thank you which flight you arrived on,
	Mr Wilson?
Jack	Yes. The British Airways flight from Heathrow.
Officer	I see. ' how long you'll be staying in the
	United States, sir?
Jack	Three weeks.
Officer	You have a return flight, don't you?
Jack	Yes, I do - on 14 July. Would you like to see the
	ticket?
Officer	No, that's OK. 3 what the purpose of your
	visit is?
Jack	Yes, I'm visiting relatives. My uncle lives here.
Officer	" where you'll be staying, sir?
Jack	At his house in Boston.
Officer	if you'll be visiting any other cities
	during your stay?
Jack	We'll probably be travelling round a bit. I'd like to
	see New York.
Officer	OK Thankwoo M-Wilson Follow your stay

1 2.23 Listen and complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box.

Can you tell me ... Could you tell me ... Do you know ... May I ask ... Would you mind telling me ...

2 Match these direct questions with the indirect questions in the dialogue.

Will you be visiting any other cities during your stay? Which flight did you arrive on? Where will you be staying? What is the purpose of your visit? How long will you be staying in the United States?

3 Compare the indirect questions in the dialogue with the direct questions in exercise 2. Choose the correct words to complete the rules in the Learn this! box.

	_
	-
-	W I
-	_
i	Ĕ
	Ž

Indirect questions

- 1 If there is not a cuestion word (who, when, etc.) we use if / how.
- 2 The word order and verb forms in an indirect question are the same as in a direct question / statement.

Grammar Builder 8.3: Indirect questions: p. 123

4	2.24 Listen. Where are the people? Write the number of the dialogue next to the place where it happens.				
	check in desk airport information desk courist information desk				
5	2.24 Put the words in the correct order. Then listen again a check. Which are indirect questions?				

- 1 you / me / Can / where / I / should / in / tell / check / ?
- 2 know / which / Do / are / flying / airline / you / with / you / ?
- 3 you / Have / if / the / on / time / any / idea / flight / is /?
- 4 if / wonder / could / you / help / me / 1 / 7
- 5 how / many / Could / nights / you'lt / be / you / tell / me / staying / ?
- 6 please / I / have / your / and / passport / May / ticket / ?.
- 7 you / me / if / you / check / in / Can / have / any / bags / tel* to /?
- 8 have / 1 / a / picaso / window / seat / Could / ?

Speaking tip

We sometimes use indirect questions when we want to sound more polite.

- 6 Read the speaking tip. Then make the questions into indirect questions.
 - 1 Where's the nearest post office?
 - 2 Do the buses run all night?
 - 3 How old are you?
 - 4 What's your friend's name?
 - 5 Are you from the Czech Republic?
 - 6 Why are you here?
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue for the situation below. Use indirect questions to make the questions more politic.

A passenger is at the information desk and wants to know

- the best way to get into town.
- · how far it is.
- how much the journey will cost.
- · where to buy a ticket.

The information clerk answers all the questions and wants to kno

- how quickly the passenger needs to get into town.
- · if the passenger needs information about hotels.
- 8 SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class.





- Read the postcards quickly. Which postcard does the photo go with?
- 2 Answer the questions.
 - 1 What was the first thing that went wrong for Hilary and Daniel?
 - 2 What did they have to eat when they finally arrived?
 - 3 Why are they unhappy with the room they are in now?
 - 4 What was the hardest part of Simon and Jackie's journey?
 - 5 Why did Simon have to go to the police station?
 - 6 Why does Simon have to pack his bag?
- 3 What is the first piece of information in both postcards? What is the last piece of information?
- 4 Read the Learn this! box. Then look at the highlighted examples of it in the postcards and say which are introductory if and which are normal pronouns.

Introductory it

1 We often use It in sentences referring to time, weather, temperature and distance.

It's eight o'clock. It's Tuesday. It took an hour to do this exercise. It's raining. It's 20°C. It's 100 km from Paris.

2 We can use it when we want to avoid starting a sentence with an infinitive, -ing form or clause, which often sounds unnatural or very formal.

It's nice being with you. (= Being with you is nice.)
It's hard to explain my feelings. (=To explain my feelings is hard.)

It's a shame that he missed the party. (That he missed the party is a shame.)

lt doesn't matter what you wear. (= What you wear doesn't matter.)

Stafamar Builder 8.4: Introductory it: p. 124

Dear Patricia

We've been in Malaga for three days now, and we're having a terrible time. The holiday started really badly — the plane was delayed and it was nearly I am, when we arrived at the hotel. The restaurant had closed, so it was a good job we still had some sandwiches from the journey. The next day we set off early for the beach. It said in the holiday brochure that it was only 100 metres from the hotel to the beach — which is true, but there's a motorway in between! The hotel itself is OK — but they gave us a room right above the disco, so it was impossible to get to sleep. They've given us another room but it isn't much better. It probably isn't worth complaining again, though.

It's time to go down for dinner now. Let's hope sis

See you soon.

Love, Hillary and Daniel xxx

Dear Sam,

I'm in Scotiard, but I wish I wasn't. It's Thursday now, and it's been raining since we arrived on Monday. It's really cold, too. Still, it's no use meaning - we can't do anything about the weather. The journey up here was OK, but I took ages to find the hotel. Then yesterday I lost my wallet - I had all my money and cards inside - and had to go to the police station. It's invisual for Jackie to complain, but even she's had enough and wants to go home.

I'd better pack my bag now. We're going to Fort William frst thing tomorrow.

LOVE, SINNIA

- 5 Imagine you are having an awful time on holiday. Choose four of the problems below (or invent your own) and make notes about them.
 - · a disastrous Journey here
 - the airline lost our luggage
 - · the weather is terrible
 - · the hotel room is cold and damp
 - the people are unfriendly
 - · the food is terrible
 - the hotel isn't finished.
 - I got food-poisoning
 - samebody stole samething
 - the view from the window is terrible
 - the car broke down
 - · it's three kilometres to the nearest beach
 - · there was nobody at the airport to meet us
 - · the beach isn't sandy, it's rocky
- Write a postcard to a friend about your holiday.

LANGUAGE REVIEW 7-8

Vocabulary

1 Complete the text with the words in the box.

•								
	â	sked	chatting	fallen	fell	going	made	
	sh be Da ha	e said i fore he isy and ve '	no. Alice s told her Harvey ⁴ up. Ar	spent mo he was a o.	ost of ilread; ut last	last nigh / ³ week b	Scarlet int 2 M out with M ut since the _ in love at	ason up laisie. m they
	M	ark	/6					
2			the miss					
	1		ad a lot of _ l	luggage	, 50 5	he went	to find a	
	2			the p	f_	fo	or the train.	
			ain was de				had fallen o	onto the
	4			or Sam's	wedo	ling bed	ause they g	ot stuck
			f					
	5		s going ba s		ng, so	she ne	eds to buy a	a new
	6	It took		ne going		_	_tb	ecaus e
	CO.	orki orki	76 76	to sean	.ii oui	nags.		
	H	al III.	/10					
Ģr	aп	ımar						
3	Co	mplete	the sent	ences wi	ith the	past si	mple form o	or would
	+1	base fo	rm of the	verbs in	brack	æts.		
	1	If Aaro	п	(drive)	more :	slowly, I	he	(not
			so many a			. = 1		
			l					
							than James roses inste	
	4		r once!	e110	u	51467 1116	10363 11136	58.G O1
	5	If Freya		(be) mo	re con	fldent, s	she	(have)
			tiends,					
	6	l wish		(not hav	e) so	much h	omework.	
	M	ark	/6					
4	Re	write t	he senten	ces usin	g the	passive		
	1	People	speak Po	ortugues	e in P	ortugal a	and Brazil.	
	2	Someo train.	one stole i	my lugga	age wh	rile I wa	s waiting fo	rthe
	3	The air		ancelle	d our f	light 50	we're waiti	ng for the
	4	_	ad closed	the mo	torway	so the	coaches we	eren't
	5	runnin Thev'll	_	all nacco	ngpre	to anot	her airport.	
	,	- Incy (i	tionsier a	in passe	5013	to anot	ner an port.	

5	Complete the	sentences	with the	words in	the box.

1	Would you like	to help you with your bags?
2	Have you got	to declare?
3	Would you like	to drink, Madam?

anything anywhere nothing somebody something

- 4 There wasn't ______ to change money in the departure lounge.
- 5 I got bored during the flight as I had ______ to read.

Mark /5

Everyday English

Mark

- 6 Put the lines (a-e) in the correct order to complete the dialogue.
 - a That's right. Lucy Knight. Pleased to meet you.
 - b Yes, you're Jordan's brother, Luke, aren't you?
 - c He's going out with my best friend, Hannah.
 - d Oh, now I remember. You're Hannah's friend Lucy, aren't you?
 - e Yes, I am. How do you know Jordan?

Luke Lucy Luke Lucy Luke Lucy	We've met before, haven't we?
Lucy Luke	Pleased to meet you, Lucy.

7 Complete the indirect questions with the words in the box.

	idea	know	mind	tell	wonder
3	Do you Would Have	ou ld you _ gyou any	wher te y	e I ca elling . wha	the toilets are, please? n change some money? me why my flight is delayed? It time the next train leaves?
		in yo on cost: /5		i tell r	ne how much a single ticket to

EXAM CHALLENGE Workbook pages 94-97

/5

SKILLS ROUND-UP 1-8

Reading

- 1 Read the text quickly. In which of the places could you see:
 - a monkeys?
- c the distant past?

b jewels?

d toy trains?

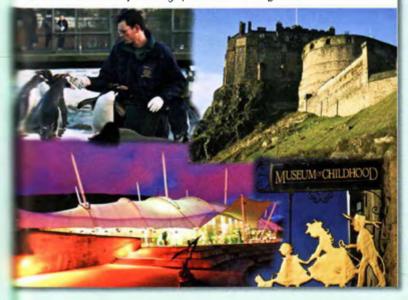
Places to visit n Edinburg

Edinburgh Castle The castle is the top attraction not only in Edinburgh, but in Scotland, and you do not need to be a listory fanatic to enjoy it. See the crown jewels of Scotland. and the 'Stone of Destiny', on which generations of Scottish. and British kings and gueens have been crowned. There are also reminders scratched on the walls of the dungeons from the days when the castle was a prison for the Frenchmen who were captured curing the Napoleonic wars.

Edinburgh Zoo Edinburgh Zoo, which is situated only ten minutes from the city centre, is another of Scotland's top tourist attractions. The zoo is particularly noted for its large. collection of penguins, who parade in front of the visitors. of feeding time. There are over 1,000 other animals there, including polar bears, monkeys and tigers.

Museum of Childhood A magical world of dolls, toys, teddy bears, games, puzzles, train sets, models and loads of other items from all over the world to keep children amused. It has been described as the 'noisiest museum in the world' and, when it opened in 1955, was believed to be the first museum. in the world to specialise in the history of childhood. And admission is free!

Dynamic Earth One of Edinburgh's newest attractions, Dynamic Earth has a virtual reality 'time machine' that takes you from the formation of the universe through 4,500 million. wars of planet Earth. You will be shaken by carthquakes, feelthe cold of the ice ages and see tropical rainstorms. Travel to the depths of the oceans and fly high above towering glaciers. and mountains. You will see, hear, feel and smell the planet as t was millions of years ago, and how it might be in the future.



2 Are the sentences true or false?

- More people visit Edinburgh Castle than any other. attraction in Scotland.
- 2 Edinburgh Castle used to be a prison.
- 3 Edinburgh Zoo Is located in the city centre.
- 4 Edinburgh has the only museum in the world which specialises in the history of childhood.
- 5 Dynamic Earth allows visitors to experience different times. and places using virtual reality.

Speaking

- 3 Work in pairs. Role-play a dialogue between Marek and somebody who works at the tourist information office in Edinburgh, Marek wants to know:
 - what the most popular attraction is in Edinburgh.
 - · how far the zoo is from the city centre
 - how much it costs to get into the Museum of Childhood
 - what you can see at Dynamic Earth

Listening

- 4 2.25 Listen. What unusual coincidence happens to Marek during his trip to Edinburgh?
- 5 225 Listen again. Number four of these scenes in the order that you hear them. There are two scenes that you do not need.

a	at Edinburgh Castle	

9	QΠ	[n#	train		

¢	in the	Princes Street Gardens	
А	at the	hotel	

e	in	a	restaurant

Г	- B Bb .	!!	 !

f at the railway station

Writing

- 6 Imagine you are Marek. Write a postcard from Edinburgh to Sarah, Include this information:
 - where you are staying.
 - what the weather is like.
 - what you have done.
 - your general opinion of Edinburgh.

Spend, spend, spend!

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING Money and finance

Vocabulary • money and payment • prepositions and noun phrases

small and large numbers

Grammar * have something done * reflexive pronouns

third conditional • clauses expressing purpose

Speaking . discussing advertising in schools

arguing your case

Writing . a formal letter: asking for information

can talk about money and people's attitudes to it.



'Tris plane: has - or rather had - a problem, which was this: most

of the people living on it were unhappy for pretty much of the time. Many solutions were suggested for this problem, but most of these were largely concerned with the movements of small green pieces. of paper, which is odd because on the whole it wasn't the small green pieces of paper that were unhappy." Douglas Adams

- Read the quotation from a science fiction novel. Which planet do you think it is describing? What are the 'small green pieces of paper'? What does the author think about them?
- 2 Complete the text with the words in the box.

Money and payment cash cash machine cheque coins credit card currency debit card notes PIN number

In the past, when people needed 1, they used to go into
their local bank and write out a 2 Now, you can go to a
at any time of the day or night, type in your
4 and get £100 in brand new £20 5 (Of course, if
you need £1 f, you still need to go to the bank.) But who
uses real money anyway these days? Most of the time, we pay by
² or ⁹ It's certainly the easiest way to pay when
you're abroad and unfamiliar with the "

- 3 🙀 2.26 Listen to five people talking about money. Match the speakers (1-5) with the sentences. There is one sentence that you do not need.
 - He/She wants to berrow some money.
 - He/She has wasted money.
 - He/She doesn't like to be in debt.
 - 4 He/She is saving money for a present.
 - He/She has bought a bargain in the sale.
 - He/She was overcharged for something.

4 2,26 Listen again. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. There is one sentence that does not need a preposition. Then listen again and check.

for	for	from	off	in	in	into	on	OTI		
1 ľv	e bec	n savir	ig up	for a	ges	_	.a ne	w pair	of train	ers

- 2 I don't like to borrow money _____ my family. 3 I went up to the till to pay _____ it.
- 4 It was £4,99 and I paid _____ cash.
- The problem is, I've just spent all my savings. bike, so I'm really broke.
- 6 He said I shouldn't waste money _____ computer games.
- 7 I'm paying £2 a week _____ my savings account.
- 8 They were £20, but as they were _____ the sale I got £5.
- 5 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.
 - 1 Have you ever bought something that was a waste of money? What?
 - 2 Have you ever saved up to buy something? What?
 - 3 Have you ever lent somebody money? How much?
 - 4 Have you ever borrowed money from somebody? How much? What for?
 - 5 Is there something that you'd like to buy, but can't afford?
 - 6 Do you always pay for things in cash?
 - 7 Have you ever been overcharged for something?

Charles Builder 9.1: Money and payment: p. 135

6 SPEAKING Try to explain the meaning of these quotations. Do you agree with them?

Money can't buy you happiness.

A bank is a place that will lend you money if you can prove that you don't need it.

Those who believe money can do anything will often do anything for money.

Vocabulary Builder 9.2: Prepositions + noun phrases: p. 136

B have something done

- Compare the two photos of Ashlee Simpson below. What has changed about her appearance?
- SPEAKING Read the text. Why do you think Ashlee Simpson changed her appearance?



Ashlee Simpson: before and after

Pop star Jessica Simpson has always looked like the perfect all-American girl: blande and beautiful. When her younger sister, Ashlee, became a pop star too, she looked much more like the 'girl next door'. But then suddenly, she changed her image. She had her hair dyed blande – and, some people agree, she has spent thousands of dollars on having her face changed too. She had her nose altered; she had her teeth whitened, and she looks as though she's had her chin reduced too. Some people think Ashlee looks better now, but others think it is sad that she wanted to change her appearance.

Read the Learn this! box. Underline examples of the structure have something done in the text.

have something done

- 1 You can use the structure have + object + past participle to say that you arranged for somebody to do something for you. (You didn't do it yourself.)
 - I had my hair cut yesterday.
- 2 You can also use the structure for unpleasant things that have happened to you.

I had my car stolen last week. He had his arm injured in an accident.

4	Complete the dialogue using the past simple form of have
	something done

Hi, Courtney, You look great). |asmine Courtney Thanks. I went to a beauty parlour vesterday and \perp (my hair / cut). Jasmine ...____ (it / dye) too? Courtney No. I did that myself at name. It's cheaper, But I ._ (my nails / paint). Look! And I ___ (my make-up / do). [asmine Very nice. Courtney You look different too. Yes, 15_____ (my teeth / whiten) last week. Jasmine They used to be really yellow! Courtney Did it cost a lot? Jasmine Actually, yes. Especially because 16.

Grammar Builder 9.1: have something done: p. 124

(my bag / steal) while i was there!

5 Read the Learn this! box. Find an example of a reflexive pronoun in exercise 4. Is it use 1 or use 2? What are the other reflexive pronouns?

Reflexive pronouns

1 We use a reflexive pronoun when the object of a verb is the same as the subject.

He cut himself while he was shaving.

2 We can use a reflexive pronoun to add emphasis.

They pointed the house themselves, without any help.

● ● Grammar Builder 9.2: Reflexive pronouns: p. 125

- 6 Rewrite the sentences using have something done. Write a negative sentence using a reflexive pronoun as well.
 - Somebody did her make-up.
 Site had her make-up done. Site didn't do it heracif.
 - Somebody removed her tattoo.
 - 3 Somebody repaired our car.
 - 4 Somebody examined his teeth.
 - Somebody tested my eyes.
 - 6 Somebody cleaned their car.
 - Somebody decorated your house.
 - 8 Somehody washed your backs.
- .7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Find out if these things have ever happened to your partner. Use Have you ever had ...?

Have you ever had your hearing checked?

Yes, I have. / No, I haven't. / Pardon?

- hearing / check.
- 4 picture / paint
- 2 hair/dye
- 5 mobile phone / steal
- 3 home/burgle
- 6 future / tell

I can dissue opinions about subservi ing it schoots.

- Which of these things can you find in your school?
 - vending machines.
 - 2 advertisements
 - 3 textbooks with the logos of large companies (e.g. Nike, Coca-Cola) on the cover
 - 4 equipment supplied by large companies (e.g. \$10ermarkets)
- Read the text. Which things from exercise 1 does it mention?



- For advertisers, there are three good reasons to target schoolchildren. Firstly, they have money to spend and the amount of money is growing. In the USA, teenagers between 12 and 17 are now spending about \$190 billion a year. Secondly, they have 'pester power': if they want something, they repeatedly ask their parents to buy it. Thirdly, they are tomorrow's adult consumers, and may stay loyal to the brands they bought as children.
- There are financial advantages for schools who allow advertising. For example, most secondary schools in Britain have vending machines which are provided by large food and drink companies. Schools usually earn between £10,000 and £15,000 a year from these. This income can then be spent on books and equipment.
- 3 Some companies supply books and other equipment directly to schools. In the past thirteen years, the giant supermarket firm, Tesco, has provided more than 50,000 computers and 500,000 pieces of computer equipment to thousands of schools, in exchange for vouchers which the students and their parents collect when they shop at Tesco. Another company, Be Sport Ltd, supplies free sports kits to schools which have the names of sponsors on the shirts and shorts. These kits would normally cost £400 per team.
- [4] However, many people are unhappy about the growing influence of big business in education. Schools should encourage free-thinking the opposite goal of advertising, which tries to influence our thoughts in a particular direction. They argue that vending machines promote unhealthy food and drink at a time when obesity in young people is a serious problem in Britain. When Cadbury's, who make chocolate in the UK, offered to supply free sports equipment to schools in return for vouchers, there was a big protest. It was pointed out that pupils would have to purchase 5,440 bars of chocolate in order to get a free volleyball set!

3 Answer the questions.

- 1 How much do US teenagers spend a year?
- 2 What is 'poster power'?
- 3 How do schools benefit from having veriding machines?
- 4 How many computers has Tosco supplied to British schools?
- 5 How much do Be Sport Ltd charge for sports kits?
- 6 Why are some people against all advertising in schools?
- 7 Why are some people against vending machines?
- 8 What was the problem with Cadbury's plan to provide sports equipment to schools?

Find and underline these words in the text.

Paragraph 1: consumers, brands

Paragraph 2: income

Paragraph 3: supply, firm, vouchers, sponsors

Paragraph 4: promote, purchase

Match the definitions with the words in exercise 4.

- 1 money that you earn
- 2 pieces of paper that you exchange for goods
- 3 buy
- 4 people who buy things
- 5 companies who pay to have their logo on something
- 6 company or business.
- 7 products made by a particular company
- 8 to give somebody something that they need
- 9 make something more attractive

6 2.27 Listen to five people talking about advertising in schools. Match the opinions with the speakers (1–5).

- a Some advertising in schools is OK, but not too much.
- Advertising in schools wouldn't be necessary if schools got more money from the government.
- Vending machines don't have any effect on what students buy.
- d For companies, advertising is more important than education.
- Sponsorship is a good idea because everybody benefits from it.
- 7 SPEAKING Say whether you agree or disagree with the opinions in exercise 6. Give reasons.

Fagree / don't agree that ... because ...

It's fair / It isn't fair to say that ... because ...

I think / I don't think it's true to say that ... because ...

Yocabulary Builder 9.3: Small and large numbers: p. 136

1 2.28 Listen and complete the dialogue.

Amy Have you got any dollars?

Tyler No, I haven't. You said that you were going to get them.

Amy If I'd had more time in the airport, I have changed some money.

Tyler Why do you always leave everything to the last minute?

Amy Well, we 2_____ have arrived at the airport late if you 3_____ made a mistake with the train times!

Tyler Look, it doesn't matter whose fault it is. We need some currency.

Amy There's a cash machine over there. We can use our credit card to get some dollars.

Tyler Good idea. Where's the green bag?

Amy It's on the kitchen table at home. I didn't bring it.

Tyler It's got my wallet in it with all my cards.

Amy If I'd _____ that, I would have brought it. But you didn't tell me.

Tyler I put it on the table. I wouldn't have put it there if I _____ wanted you to bring it!

Amy So, we're in New York with no currency and no plastic. What are we going to do?

2 Answer the questions about the dialogue.

- 1 Did Amy and Tyler have a lot of time in the airport?
- 2 Who made a mistake with the train times?
- 3 Did Amy bring Tyler's green bag?
- 4 Why did Tyler put his green bag on the table?
- 3 Read the Learn this! box. How many examples of the third conditional are there in exercise 1?

Third conditional

- 1 We use the third conditional to talk about the imaginary result of things that did not happen. If I'd left home earlier, I wouldn't have arrived late.
- 2 We often use it to express criticism or regret.

 I wouldn't have got angry if you'd told the truth!
- 3 We form the third conditional with if + past perfect, would have + past participle
- 4 We can also put the *if* clause in the second part of the sentence.
 - I'd have cooked more food if I'd known you were so hungry.
- 5 We often use short forms in third conditional sentences. The short form of both had and would is 'd. If I'd had enough money, I'd have bought it.

- 4 2.29 Complete the third conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use short forms. Then listen and check.
 - If she hadrin become (not become) a singer, she'd have been an actress.
 - 2 If they hadn't accepted credit cards, we _____ (pay) in cash.
 - 3 We _____ (win) if we'd played better.
 - 4 If that picture _____ (be) for sale, I'c, have bought it.
 - 5 She _____ (not fail) her exams if she ____ (work) a bit harder.
 - _____ (not eat) that sandwich if I _____ (see) you drop it on the floor.
 - 7 She ______ (not leave) if you ______ (not be) ruce to her.
 - 8 You . _____ (be able) to afford the jacket if you _____ (not spend) all your money on COs.
- 5 2.29 PRONUNCIATION Listen again and repeat the sentences in exercise 4. How is the word have pronounced?
- 6 Rewrite the sentences as third conditional sentences.
 - We couldn't pay for dinner because you didn't bring your credit card.

We could have paid for dinner if you'd brought your credit card.

- 2 We didn't go skiing because it didn't snow.
- 3 I didn't invite you to my party because I didn't have your number.
- 4 She didn't buy you a present because she didn't know it was your birthday.
- 5 I didn't make pizza because I didn't have any flour.
- 6 They didn't go to the beach because it wasn't sunny.
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Find out what your partner would have done if he or she:
 - 1 had seen a robbery on the way to school this morning.
 - 2 hadn't come to school today.
 - 3 had woken up an hour later than usual this morning.
 - 4 hadn't brought any books to the class.
 - 5 had felt really hungry on the way to school this morning.

What would you have done if you'd seen a robbery on the way to school this morning?

I'd have taken a photo with my mobile and then I'd have called the police.

Grammar Builder 9.3: Third conditional: p. 125

READING Giving it all away

- 1 SPEAKING Imagine you had €1 million and had to give it away to people that you didn't know personally. Who would you give it to, and why?
- 2 Read the text. How did Percy Ross decide who to give money to?



Thanks a MILLION

Imagine you'd bought a lottery ticket and won \$30 million. What would you do with the money? Would you give it all away? [] But in fact, there have been several examples over the years of millionaires who gave away all their money to help others. One of

the most famous was Percy Ross.
Ross was born in 1916 in Michigan. His parents had

Ross was born in 1916 in Michigan. His parents had come to the USA from Latvia and Russia and the family were poor. But Percy soon showed a talent

for business and made a fortune in the fur trade and auction business. [22] But he soon made a fortune again – this time by manufacturing plastic bags. In 1969, he sold his plastic bag company for millions of dollars.

- Match the sentences (a-f) with the gaps (1-5) in the text.
 There is one sentence that you do not need.
 - a Nobody knows exactly how much this was.
 - b He would have given it all away.
 - c. Surely, nobody in their right mind would do that.
 - d If Ross thought they genuinely needed and deserved the money, he gave it to them.
 - e. Then disaster struck and he lost all his money.
 - f His parents would have bought him one if they had been able to afford it, but they were too poor.

Reading tip

When you need to find specific information (like, for example, times or prices) in a text, you do not have to read every word. It's easier to find numbers quickly just by looking through.

15 Ross started giving away his fortune in 1977: he gave \$50,000 to 50 Victnamese refugees so that they could make a new home in the USA. Then he held a Christmas party for 1,050 poor children in the American town of Minneapolis. Ross remembered that, when he was a child, he really wanted a bike.

3 Ross bought a bike for every one of the 1,050 children at the party.

After these first experiences of giving money away, Ross decided to do it on a regular basis. He started

- a newspaper column called "Thanks a Million", and later a radio show, in order to give away his money.
 Readers and listeners wrote in and asked for money.
 He received about 40,000 requests every month and sont cheques to about 150 every week. His gifts
- included money for poor families to help with their shopping bills and \$16,500 in silver coins for children at a parade.

It took years, but Ross finally succeeded in giving away his entire fortune. He published his last

- achieved my goal,' he wrote. 'I've given it all away.'

 [a] 'I never tell anybody,' he said. 'It's not a question of how much one gives. Would I be a better person if I gave away \$2 million than if I gave \$1 million?'
- 40 However, people estimate that he gave away around \$30 million. And did he have any regrets? On the contrary. 'If I'd had twice as much,' he said, 'I still would have given it all away. For every person I helped, there were 400 to 500 I couldn't help.'
- 45 Percy Ross died in 2001 at the age of 85.

- - Percy Ross is the only millionaire who has given away all his money,
 - 2. Ross's parents were born in the USA.
 - Ross's first bissiness was a company that made plastic bags.
 - 4 Ross gave money to some people who had come to the USA to start a new life.
 - Ross gave bikes to poor children because his parents hadn't been able to give him a bike.
 - 6 Ross started his newspaper column and radio show at the same time.
 - Ross did not send money to everybody who asked for it.
 - 8 After giving away all his money, Ross wished that he hadn't done it.
- 6 Look at the highlighted phrases in the text. Complete the Learn this! box.

=	Clauses expressing purpose
EARN THIS	1 We can use an infinitive to explain the purpose of an
2	action.
AR	He went to the Alps to go skiing.
2	2 We can also use these phrases
	to + base form
	that + subject + verb (usually a modal verb, e.g.
	could)

7 Match the two parts of the sentences and join them with one of the expressions from exercise 6.

1	Ben saved for years and years in		
2	I asked for a receipt		
3	He does a lot of housework	_	
4	She borrowed £30		
5	He took his debit card with him	Τ.	

- a he could get money from the cash machine.
- b I could take the jeans back if they didn't fit.
- c learn some pocket money.
- d buy a new car.
- she could buy a new MP3 player.
- 8 2.30 Read and listen to the song. Find phrases which mean:
 - 1 you looked after me
 - 2 the best years of my life
 - 3 I would die (to have you back again)
 - 4 the part of me that can't forget
 - 5 you don't show how important someone is to you

- 9 SPEAKING Do you think the song is happy or sad? Give reasons for your opinion.
- 10 SPEAKING Imagine that you had to give away everything you own. Which three objects would you be saddest to lose?

Everything I Own

You sheltered me from harm, Kept me warm, kept me warm. You gave my life to me, Set me free, set me free.

5 The finest years I ever knew Were all the years I had with you.

[Chorus]

I would give anything I own.
Give up my life, my heart, my home.
I would give everything I own.
Just to have you back again.

You taught me how to love, What it's of, what it's of You never said too much, But still you showed the way.

15 And I knew from watching you. Nobody else could ever know. The part of me that can't let go.

[Chorus]

Is there someone you know.
You're loving them so.

20 But taking them all for granted.
You may lose them one day.
Someone takes them away.
And they don't hear the words you long to say.

[Chorus]

Just to touch you once again.



Sophie It's ten o'clock in the evening. We need

somewhere to stay.

Lydia I think we should stay in that youth hostel. It's

right opposite!

Sophie Really? I'm not sure that's a good idea.

Lvdia Why not?

Sophie Youth hostels aren't always very clean. Personally.

I'd rather we found a campsite. We've got a tent.

We should use it.

Lydia True, but it's late, and there aren't any campsites

in the centre of town. I really think we'd be better

off staying in the youth hostel.

Sophie I'm not convinced. A campsite would be cheaper,

and we could get a bus there.

Lydia Well, if that's what you really want to do, then OK.

Sophie Great! Let's find a bus stop.

- 2.31 Sophie and Lydia are backpacking. Read and listen to their conversation and answer the questions.
 - 1 What do they disagree about?
 - 2. Who gets her own way in the end?
- Who uses these facts and opinions to argue their case? Write Sophie or Lydia.
 - 1 The youth hostel is very near. __
 - Youth hostels are sometimes dirty.
 - 3 They've got a tent with them.
 - 4. The campsites are all out of town.
 - Campsites are cheaper than youth hostels.
 - 6 There are buses to the campsites.

- 3 \$\infty\$ 2.32 Listen to three conversations. Match the speakers with the disagreements.
 - 1 Lily and Cameron disagree about
 - 2 James and Chioe disagree about
 - 3 Leo and Millie disagree about
 - a what to buy their dad for his birthday.
 - b what food to prepare for a party.
 - c whether to have a vending machine in the school.
- 4 2.32 Listen again. Who gets their own way in each disagreement?
- 5 Put the expressions from the dialogues into the correct group: A, B, C or D.
 - 1 I suppose you could be right.
 - 2 Oh, I don't agree.
 - 3 I take your point, but on the other hand, ...
 - 4 Are you sure about that?
 - 5 I see what you mean, but ...
 - 6 OK, whatever you want. I don't feel strongly about it.
 - 7 | I still think I'm right.
 - 8 Do you really think so?

A Doubting a sugg	estion
-------------------	--------

1

2

B Giving an alternative suggestion

1

2

C Conceding the argument

1

2

D Refusing to concede

1

2

- Find phrases in exercise 1 to add to the groups in exercise 5.
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs, Choose one of the ideas below and think of suggestions and alternative suggestions. Include reasons.
 - · where to go on holiday.
- · who to invite to a party
- what to watch on television
- · which computer to buy
- 8 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue like the one in exercise 1. Include your ideas from exercise 7 and expressions from exercise 5.
- 9 SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class.

Read the letter. What two things does Clare need to buy?

Dear Sir or Medam.

I am writing to enquire about the range of tents that I recently saw advertised in Let's Go Camping magazine.

I am planning a camping holiday this summer in Scotland. As you know, it can be quite wet and windy there, even in summer, so could you please tell me whether the Backpacker or the Campout range would be more suitable?

I am going with two friends, and we are planning to take quite a lot of equipment. Do you know if the three-berth tents have plenty of storage space?

I would be grateful if you could also let me know what colours the tents are available in, and how long it will take to deliver.

Finally, could you also tell me if you sell sleeping bags?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully

Clare Bairce

Clare Baines

Look at the advertisement. In which paragraphs of the letter does Clare ask about the things that she has noted?

OK for wet and windy Scottish weather?

sleeping bags?

THE GREAT OUTDOOKS

We specialise in budget tents and camping equipment.

Backpacker tents.
Prices start at £75.

Campout tents – light-weight tents at affordable prices. From £55.

All tents available in two-, three- or four-berth sizes.

Limited colours. <

Dollvory free in the UK



oid enough for three with lets of luggage?

how long? which colours?

3 How does Clare start and end the letter? How would she start and end it if she knew the name of the person she was writing to?

Writing tip

- At the start of your letter, give your reason for writing.
- Use indirect questions to make them more polite.
 How much is a two-berth tent? X
 Could you tell me how much a two-berth tent is/would be? ✓
- Read the writing tip and find four indirect questions in Clare's letter.
- 5 Imagine you are going on a cycling holiday and you need to buy a bicycle. Look at the advertisement and the notes that you have made. Answer the questions:
 - 1 Will you be cycling only on roads?
 - 2 Why do you need panniers?
 - 3 What other equipment do you need?

OK for riding on rough I terrain - which bike? taking lots of luggage – fit panniers? \

Discount Bikes

The UK's leading discount bike outlet. Great bikes for the summer holidays.



Easyride Touring bikes, From £175

Adventurer bikes, From £199

Available in most sizes. We also stock bike accessories.
Free postage and packing on orders over £200.

cost for bikes

under £200?

large frames available? lights and locks?

- Now write a letter to Discount Bikes asking for more information.
 Use the writing guide below.
 - Start and end the letter correctly.
 - Use indirect questions.
 - In the first paragraph, say where you saw the advertisement and why you are writing.
 - In the second paragraph, explain what you need the bike for and ask your most important question.
 - Put your remaining questions into two or three paragraphs, with the most important questions first.

1 Get ready to READ Look at the photo of a floating hotel. Which adjectives from the box could be used to describe it.

close to nature exciting inexpensive luxurious movable simple spacious unconventional



2 Do the Reading exam task.

READING.exam task

Read the text. Choose the best option: A, B, C or D.

$\mathit{Friendlier}$ footprints

Providing five-star luxury in the middle of a treasured wilderness without damaging the environment might not be easy, but it is far from impossible. The King Pacific Lodge in British Columbia's Great Bear Rainforest proves that if enough care and attention is taken, the task is within the reach of any tourist provider.

Unlike many other hotel building projects no trees were cut down and no land was wasted in order to build it. The Lodge does not have a permanent location but sits on a floating barge tower into the sea bay in May, where it anchors till September. Those wishing to stay in one of its seventeen rooms must access it by boat or seaplane. Each guest staying at the Lodge is charged 3% conservation tax. but is rewarded by the chance to sight whales and bears. And since these are the main attractions of the area and of the Lodge, the management is well aware that in order to stay in business they must leave the area uncouched.

In 2000, the Lodge management signed an agreement with the native Gitga'at people by whom they were later adopted. Together they work for the benefit of the area. The Lodge recognises the native tribe as the owners of the land, pays the tribe for the use of their land and even supports the native youth and employs the tribe's people. They, in turn, teach the newcomers about the local culture.

The King Pacific Lodge is one of a growing number of tourism companies that go beyond purely minimising their environmental impact to win the approval of the local community where they establish their business. These companies use eco-friendly solutions to problems, and are careful to restrict their use of resources and protect. threatened species. Realising how destructive tourism can be, they want to avoid the love-it-to-death effect of courism and leave a lighter environmental footprint.

- 1 According to the text, luxury hotels
 - A usually have a positive effect on their environment.
 - B are more eco-friendly when they are difficult to reach.
 - C do not harm the environment if they are carefully. designed.
 - D are impossible to find in the middle of a wilderness.
- 2 The King Pacific Lodge
 - A is situated far away from an important wilderness.
 - B has been created after careful consideration.
 - C is less luxurious than might be expected.
 - D is based on a good example.
- 3 What is true about the Lodge?
 - A It is located in an area without any trees.
 - B It can be moved from place to place.
 - C Guests have to pay extra for the flight to get there. D Guests can take part in conservation programmes.
- 4 The Lodge management
 - A cooperate with the native people.
 - B bought the land for a lot of money.
 - C co not care about the local culture.
 - D are difficult to cooperate with.
- Some of the native people
 - A gid not want to sell their land.
 - B go to school to learn about the local culture.
 - Work from a very early age.
 - D earn money at the Lodge.
- 6 According to the text, the tourist industry
 - A lignores the importance of eco-friendly tourism.
 - B will always be a threat to the environment.
 - C can limit the damage it does to the environment.
 - D is in conflict with the local communities.
- 3 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Work in pairs, imagine that you are planning a holiday at the King Pacific Lodge. Using information from the reading text and your imagination, agree on:

- when you will visit the hotel,
- 2 how you will travel there,
- 3 how long you plan to stay there,
- 4 two activities from the list below that you would like to do there together.

ocean fishing hiking helicopter trips kayaking wildlife tours whale watching

Get ready for your EXAM 10

- 1 Get ready to LISTEN Match words from the two columns to make phrases connected with money.
 - 1 cash
- a account
- 2 debit
- b card.
- 3 hard
- c currency
- 4 PIN
- d machine
- 5 pocket
- e money
- 6 savings
- f number
- Do the Listening exam task.

LISTENING exam task

Listen to five speakers talking about money. Match statements A-F to speakers 1-5. There is one statement you do not need to use.

- A You should teach children how to save money for things. they really desire.
- B. You should buy children whatever they want, if you can:
- C. You should set a good example to your children regarding money,
- You should only give children pocket money if they help. around the house.
- E You should give children control of their own money as soon as possible.
- F You should protect children from having to think about money at all,

Speaker 1	Speaker 2	Spe	eaker 3	
Speaker 4	Speaker 5			

3 Do the Use of English exam task.

USE OF ENGLISH exam task

Choose the best word (A-D) to complete each gap.

A 21st century epidemic

While medical scientists are always on the lookout for new and deadly forms of the influenza virus, a few psychologists started to talk and write about the dangers of a completely different kind of epidemic; affluenza. The worditself is a mixture of 'influenza' and 'affluent', 2_____ means 'wealthy or rich'. It describes an unhealthy obsession with money and material possessions.

British psychologist Oliver James, 2_____ has written two books on the subject, defines affluenza as 'placing a high value on money, possessions, appearances and fame'. He believes that the condition is more common in Englishspeaking countries for ... in other parts of the world. The reason for this, according to James, is that the USA, Britain, Australia, New Zealand and Canada are more obsessed with making money than other nations. This leads to stress and

June 1. In support of his theory, James points 6_____ that people in English-speaking countries are twice as likely to suffer mental health problems as people who live in mainland Europe.

Perhaps the most worrying aspect of affluenza is that it is starting to affect people at younger and younger ages. Teenagers, and 2______ young children, make constant demands for possessions, and become genuinely unhappy if they do not have these things *_____ for them. Some experts blame advertising in schools: *_____ think that Hollywood and TV shows are the cause. The only cure seems to be for parents to spend time "_____ their children the value of other things in life, like friendship, charity and laughter.

2 3 4 5 6 7	A will have A who A who A that A unhappy A up A even	B B B B B	that that as unhappily to every	000000	had where where for unhappier towards enough	00000	were which which than unhappiness out each
8	A to buy	В	buying	¢	pπλ	D	bought
	A another A teaching		others taught	_	each other to teach	_	otherwise teach

4 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Compare and contrast the two photos. Answer the questions.



- What do you think the woman is paying for? What makes you think this?
- 2 What do you think the man is paying for? What makes you think this?
- 3 What are the advantages and disadvantages of using a credit card?
- 4 What would be the advantages of disadvantages of only. using cash to buy things?

Inspiration

Art and artists

THIS UNIT INCLUDES •• • •

Vocabulary • visual and performing arts = artists and artistic activities

compound nouns (3)

Grammar • participle clauses • determiners: all, each, every, few, little, etc.

so and such * nominal subject clauses.

Speaking - talking about the arts - describing a picture - discussion about graffit

evaluating an experience.

Writing • a discursive essary

I can talk about different types of art.

1 Label the photos with words and phrases from the box. Check the meaning of all these words in the Wordlist in the Workbook.

Visual and performing arts an abstract painting buskers a gig graffiti an installation juggling performance art a portrait a sculpture a stage musical a recital a still life













- 2 Match the works of art and performances from the box in exercise 1 with one or more of the places where you could see or hear them.
 - a an art gallery
- a concert hall
- e outdoors

- b a theatre
- d a club

- 3 Work in pairs. What other types of works of art or performances can you see or hear at the places in exercise 2? art gallery: photographe, vases ...
- 4 3.01 Read the sentences and, if necessary, check the meaning of the words in red in the Wordlist on page 143. Then listen. What is happening? Match the sentences to the dialogues (1-7).
 - An actress is changing into her costume.
 - b. Two opera singers are rehearsing a scene.
 - c. An artist is talking to his model.
 - d Adancer is practising some stops.
 - e. Two stage hands are moving some scenery.
 - f. A conductor is talking to his orchestra.
 - g. A technician is testing the sound and lighting.
- 5 3.01 Listen again. Complete the sentences from the conversations with the words and phrases in the box.

aria	audience	director	drum kit	lines	melody
mikes	oll paint	ing scrip	t sketch	violins	

- 1 It isn't a ______, it's an _____
- 2 I'm going to have a word with the _____
- 3 And I sing my . _ ____
- 4 Where's my ______? I need to practise my ______.
- 5 Can you test the ______ on the _____?
- 6 Remember that the _____ have the _____.
- 7 Look straight at the ______.
- 6 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions. Give reasons for your answers.
 - 1 Which musical instrument would you most like to be able to play?
 - Which of the arts in exercise 1 do you think needs the most skill, and which the least?
 - 3 Which of the arts in exercise 1 would you most like to be really good at?

Vocabulary Builder 10.1: Artists and artistic activities: p



- 1 Look at the picture. Who painted it? Read the first sentence of the text and check.
- Read the text. Find two mistakes in the description of the painting.



his picture, painted by the French artist Georges Sentral het ween 1884 and 1886, is called Sunday afternoon on the island of La Grande Jaure. It have Parisians relaying beside a lake on a cloudy afternoon. The young and women, wearing their best Sunday clothes, appear as graceful as his speedboats reflected in the water.

This large picture, measuring approximately 200 cm by 300 cm, is made to of thousands of tiny dots of colour. Scurat believed that this form painting, now known as pointillism, would make the colours more filiant. La Grande Jane, permanently displayed in Chicago, is Scurat's tamous work. There is even a stage musical based on the picture, apposed in 1984 by Stephen Sondheim.

3 Read the Learn this! box. In which of the examples does the participle clause replace a non-defining relative clause?

Participle clauses

- 1 We can use participle clauses to give more information about a noun. They can be described as shortened relative clauses (defining or non-defining). There's a man reading a book. (=who is reading a book)
- 2 They contain either a present participle (-ing form) or past participle (-ed).
- 3 Clauses with a present participle replace an active verb. The verb they replace can be in any tense.

 He lived in a flat belonging to his father.

 (=which belonged to)
- 4 Clauses with a past participle replace a passive verb.
 The verb they replace can be in any tense.
 The final episode, shown on TV tomorrow, will be watched by millions. (=which will be shown on TV tomorrow)
- Underline all the participle clauses in the text in exercise 2.
 Answer the questions for each clause.
 - 1 Does it replace a defining or non-defining relative clause?
 - 2 Does it begin and end with a comma?

- 5 Rewrite the participle clauses in the text as relative clauses.
 This picture, which was painted by the Grench artist Georges Search ...
 - Grammar Builder 10.1: Participle clauses: p. 126
- 6 Complete the description of La Grande Jatte with the present and past participle form of the yerbs in the box.

accompany hold leave lie lose smoke startle wear

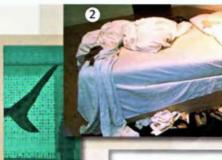
7 SPEAKING Find the people and things (1~7) in the picture below and describe them. Use present participle clauses and the verbs in the box to help you.

cook drink kiss hold lie ride smile talk watch wear

- 1 the man on the left with a beard
- 2 the woman in the centre of the picture
- 3 the men with black hats
- 4 the woman in the foreground
- 5 the hald man
- 6 the man in the top right-hand corner of the picture
- 7 the two women on the right.









Britart

- 1 Young British Artists (or Britart) are a group of conceptual artists, painters, photographers and sculptors besed in London who became famous in the 1990s for their 'shock tactics' their use of strange materials and unusual subject matter.
- 2 Their first exhibition, celled Freeze, was organised in 1988 by Demien Hirst, a leading member of Britart who at that time was still a student at art college. The exhibition was seen by a keen art collector, Charles Seatchi, who bought one of Hirst's earliest installations: a glass case containing real flies and maggots infeeding off a rotting onw's head. Seatchi became an important supporter of Britart.
- 3 In 1997, a major exhibition called Sensation, held in the Royal Academy in London and seen by over 300,000 people, brought Britart to the attention of a wide audience. Damien Hirst exhibited
 - 15a dead shark floating in a tank. Tracey Emin, another famous artist.
 exhibited a tent which she had decorated with the names of all
 the boyfriends she'd ever had. (Her most famous work, though,
 is My Bed, which is actually her real-life, and rather massy, bed
 standing in the middle of an art gallery!) Although the exhibition
 20was a huge success, there were many public complaints in the
 - 20 was a nuge success, there were many public complaints in the media, as a lot of the artwork was considered offensive or in bad taste.
- 4 Since then, Britart has continued to dominate the British art scene, and it has provoked endless 'ls this art?' discussions.
 - 25 People still cen't agree, and although the artists have their supporters, they still receive a lot of criticism. However, their exhibitions are always well attended. It will be interesting to see how long they can continue to challenge our ideas of what art, really is. Or will it all start to look normal?

- Describe what you can see in the photos.
- Read the text quickly. Which of the three works of art is not mentioned in the text?
- 3 Match four of the headings with paragraphs (1-4).
 - a Success and scandal
- d Continuing debates
- b. Who are Britart?
- e The beginnings of Britart
- c Britart conquers the USA
- 4 Find the phrases in paragraphs 1-3 of the text and explain them in your own words.
 - 1 conceptual artists
- 5 la keen art collector
- 2 shock tactics
- 6 a major exhibition.
- 3 strange materials
- 7 la wide audience
- 4 unusual subject matter
- 8 in bad taste
- 5 Solution 3.02 Listen to two people talking about the works of art in the photos. Which works does the man like? Which works does the woman like?
- 6 3.02 Listen again. Complete the sentences. Who says them, the man (M) or the woman (W)?

 - 3 I think it's i_____.
 - 4 It's r_____.
 - 5 It's very c_____. The artist is trying to make us think about death in a new w_____.
 - 6 But where is the s_____in putting a shark in a tank?
 - 7 I could do that m_____
 - 8 Artists are always a_____ of their time.
 - 9 | know modern art isn't to everybody's t_____
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Discuss the questions, then share your ideas with the class.
 - 1 Do you like the works of art in the photos? Why?/Why not?
 - 2 In general, do you like modern art, or do you prefer traditional painting and sculpture?
 - 3 Do you remember any modern work of art that you loved or hateo? What was it? Describe it.
 - 4 Can anything be a work of art if it's in an art gallery? Why?/Why not?

Read the text and answer the question in the title.

Can ballet change lives?



In 2006, a TV programme called How Ballet Changed My Life showed 60 young people taking part in a special performance of the ballet Rameo and Juliet.

All of the participants were from disadvantaged families, with little maney and few opportunities. Some participants had already been in trouble with the law. Each young person tells his or her story as part of the TV

programme, which follows every step of their 18-month preparation. Before taking part in the programme, most of them had no experience of ballet. By the end, after much hard work and many hours of rehearsal, every one of them felt that the experience had led to some improvement in their attitude to life. A few of them might even become professional performers.

Look at the words in blue in the text and complete table 1.

Determiners: table 1			
every,	+ singular countable noun		
few, a few,	+ plural noun		
little, a little,	+ uncountable noun		
all, most,, any, no	+ countable or uncountable noun		

3 Look at the words in red in the text. What is the missing word in table 2?

Determiners: table 2					
all, most, some, any,		the, a/an			
(a) few, (a) little		my, your, etc.	+ поцп		
much, many,	_	this, that, etc.			
each, every one, none		us, it, them, you	, etc.		
Remember the same rules in table 1 apply to the nouns and					

pronouns that follow the determiner, e.g. much of + uncountable noun.

• Grammar Builder 10.2: Determiners: p. 126

4 Choose the correct words in the lext.

In the TV programme The Choir, a conductor called Gareth Malone takes 30 teenagers who have never sung in a choir before and prepares them for an international choir competition in China. All / Every of the teenagers are from a secondary school near London. Gareth was surprised to find that there were 2no / none music lessons at the school, and 2most of / most the students had 2few / little experience of classical music. In their auditions, 'many / much of the



students chose to sing R&B songs! Nearly *all / each of the students at the school took part in the auditions, but only a 'few / little of them were good enough for the choir. There wasn't *much / much of time for rebearsal – only nine months – but the choir performed well and *every one / every of the students grew in confidence as a result of the experience.

Look out!

We use few and little (rather than a few and a little) when we want to emphasise the smallness of the number or quantity. It usually has a negative meaning. Compare: She enjoyed the party. She had a little food and chatted with a few nice people.

She hated the party. There was little food and few nice people.

5	Read the Look out! box. Complete the sentences with few
	a few, little or a little.

1	They cancelled the concert because tickets had
	been sold.
2	On Saturday, I went for a meal with friends.
3	He's very lazy and spends time working.
4	Do you m'nd if I ask you questions?

- 5 I can afford to buy a new phone because I've earned _____ money working in my uncle's shop.
- 6 It's Liszt's most difficult work for piano and ______ pianists can play it welt.
- 7 This soup tastes good, but it needs ______ salt.
- 6 Complete the sentences about your classmates with the phrases in the box. Try to guess the truth.

all a few many most none some
1 of them have seen a ballet performance on stage.
2 of them have sung in a choir.
3 of them walked to school this morning.
4 of them enjoy dancing.
5 of them like chocolate.
6 of them had a shower this morning.

7 SPEAKING Read your sentences from exercise 6 to the class. Find out if they are correct.





BANKSY

'Banksy' is the name of a graffiti artist from Britain. Nobody knows his real name and few people have seen him. He has become farmous for his street art, which has appeared in London and in other cities

s around the world. He has to stay unknown because graffiti is illegal. Nobody has caught him yet.

His images are very striking and often funny, and their message is usually anti-war, anti-capitalism and pro-freedom. He has claimed responsibility for a

- number of famous stunts over the past few years. For example, in 2001 he climbed into the penguin area at London Zoo and wrote 'We're bored of fish' in twometre high letters on the wall. In May 2005, he made a primitive cave painting, showing a human hunting
- animals with a shopping trolley. He hung it secretly on the wall at the British Museum. In August of the same year, he painted nine images on the Palestinian side of the Israeli West Bank wall, including a picture of children digging a hole through the wall.
- Nowadays, Banksy does some paid work for charities such as Greenpeace. He refuses to work for big businesses or do advertising. He has also started painting pictures. He has done a series of paintings based on famous works of art, such as Monet's
- 25 Water-Lily Pond, except with rubbish floating in the water and a shopping trolley sticking out. 2

Pavement Picasso

'Pavement Picasso' is another name for Julian Beever, a chalk artist from Britain. He has been creating chalk drawings on the pavement for over ten years now. He has worked in cities all over the world, from Brussels to New York.

He works in chalk, so his art, which takes about three days to complete, can easily be destroyed by a shower of rain. The most important thing for him is to get a photo at the end before that happens.

He first started pavement drawing with copies of famous paintings like the *Mona Lisa* in the streets of Europe. Then he painted portraits of famous people; for example, when Princess Diana died, he did a

4e portrait of her on a London pavement. 3

SPEAKING Look at picture 3. Describe what is happening using the words in the box to help you. Which part of the picture is real, and not drawn?

cars climb crouch fall ledge look-up/down neighbour pavement rescue Spiderman road window





But he is most famous for his amazing 3D images, which he started doing a few years ago. He can do a painting on the pavement which looks like a gigantic bottle of Coke standing in the road when you look at it from a certain angle. Some of his most elaborate 3D Images show someone diving into a swimming pool, or being rescued from a building by Spiderman!

Nowadays, Beever is often paid by companies to advertise their products, but he still works on the pavement. He says, 'My art is for anybody, it's for people who wouldn't go into an art gallery. It's art for the people.'

- 2 Read the texts quickly. Decide which two of the pictures (1-4) are by Banksy, and which two are by Pavement Picasso. Which pictures do you prefer? Give reasons.
- 3 Match the sentences with gaps 1-4 in the text. There is one sentence that you do not need.
 - a He sells them in a small gallery in London, but you'll never see him there.
 - **b** He earns money by charging people to see his pictures.
 - He usually puts himself in the painting when he takes a photo of his work.
 - d. The Museum has since allowed it to stay there.
 - He also painted Bill Clinton on a New York sidewalk when he became President of the United States.
- 4 Decide if the sentences are true or false for each artist.

		Banksy	Pavement Picasso
1	He's British.		
2	He works outside.		
3	People know his real name.		
4	Some of his work is illegal.		
5	He does advertisements.		
6	He sells his work,		
7	His work 's political.		
8	His work disappears if it rains.		
9	He has done work based		
	on famous works of art.		

- 5 find adjectives in the text that mean:
 - 1 against the law (line 6)
 - 2 very interesting and unusual (line 7)
 - 3 belonging to a very early, simple society (line 14).
 - 4 incredible (line 41)
 - 5 very big (line 43)
 - 6 very detailed and complicated (line 45)
- 6 Find six present participle clauses and one past participle clause in the second and third paragraphs of the Banksy text.
- 7 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Choose one of the pictures (2-4). Make notes about what you can see. Then describe the picture to the class.
- 8 SPEAKING Discuss the question with the class. Use the phrases in the box to help you. Then have a class vote.

 Graffiti: is it art or vandalism?

Expressing opinions
in my opinion, ... I think ...
I agree. Yes, that's right.
I don't agree. I don't think that's right.
That may be true, but ... I see your point, but ...

Rollder 10.2: Compound nouns (3): p. 137

Evaluating an experience



Lucy Tara	What did you do at the weekend? I went to see a ballet with my aunt. We got a train down to London and then went to the theatre at Sadler's Wells.
Lucy	What was the ballet like?
Tara	It was fantastic! I loved every minute of it.
Lucy	Really? What was so good about it?
Tara	Everything, really. The music was wonderful, and
Lucy Tara Lucy	the dancers were awesome. They were so athletic! It sounds great. And I loved the male lead. He was such a brilliant dancer – and so handsome! You should come with me next time I go. Yes, I'd love to.

1	3.03	Read and list	en to the dialogue	e. What did Tara
	like about	the ballet? Tid	ck (/) the things t	hat she mentions.

the costumes	the scenery	
the music	the special effects	
the story	the danking	
the male lead	the female lead	

- 2 Find five adjectives in the dialogue which mean 'extremely good'.
- 3 Imagine that Tara hated everything about the ballet. Rewrite the dialogue using some of the adjectives below and changing other words where necessary.

appalling	g atrocious	awful	dreadful	pathetic
terrible	unattractive			

4	Read the Learn this! box. How many examples of so and such
	are in the dialogue in exercise 1?

MP V	ar the diblogue in exclusion 2.
5	so and such
2	We can use so or such to intensify the meaning of an
	adjective or adverb. We use them in these structures
ARR	1 be + so + adjective
۳,	I'm so tired!

2 so + adverb They all danced so brilliantly.

- 3 such + adjective + plural noun/uncountable noun She's got such beautiful eyes/hair.
- 4 such + a/an + adjective + noun He's got such an amazing voice.

5 Complete the sentences with so, such or suc	$ch \ o(n)$.
---	---------------

complete the sentences with say such at such bliss
1 The songs were wonderful!
2 The main character was atrocious actor:
3 I'd never seen amazing scenery!
4 The special effects were brilliant!
5 The actors were all wearing beautiful costumes
6 The orchestra played well!
Grammar Builder 10.3: so and such: p. 127

- 6 S 3.04 PRONUNCIATION Listen and repeat the sentences In exercise 5. Try to copy the intonation.
- 7 S 3.05 Listen to four dialogues. Match what the people are talking about with the events in the box.

a musical an opera a film a modern dance

8 3.05 Listen again. Which of the aspects (a-g) does each speaker mention? Put a tick (/) for a positive comment, and a cross (X) for a negative comment.

		1 2 3 4
а	the costumes	
b	the music	1
С	the story	Х
d	the scenery	
¢	the dancing	
f	the male lead	
g	the female lead	

- 9 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue about a real or imaginary show that you thought was very good or very bad, Comment on some of the aspects in exercise 8 and use your own ideas.
- 10 SPEAKING Act out your dialogue to the class.

1 Read the essay and look at the essay plan below. Which paragraph in the plan is missing from the finished essay?

How does art affect our everyday lives?

Art does not just refer to paintings in a museum. There are many different kinds of art. Advertising and architecture are both kinds of art too, in my opinion, and they both have an effect on our lives. Even people who are not interested in going to art galleries are still affected by these other kinds of art.

Posters and other forms of advertisements are all around us, especially in towns and cities, and we cannot help seeing them. If they are successful advertisements, they affect our opinions and behaviour, they make us want to buy certain products. In addition, adverts often make the streets more colourful and attractive.

Buildings are not just places where we live and work – they are also part of our environment. Architecture has an effect on the way we feel. For example, living or working in a bright, attractive building makes people feel more optimistic, whereas dark, ugly buildings can make people feel gloomy.

To sum up, I believe that different forms of art are all around us and have a big effect on our everyday lives. Unfortunately, most cities and towns have parts which are ugly and depressing. What they need are beautiful buildings and colourful advertisements.

- Introduction art = not just paintings also architecture, ads, etc.
- 2 ads part of environment make us want to buy colourful, attractive
- 3 architecture affects how we feel e.g. bright buildings → optimism ugly buildings → depression
- 4 fashion not just 'designer' clothes also
 'street' fashion
 clothes affect how we judge sh
 e.g. unusual clothes : interesting person
- 5 sum up ugly cities need beautiful buildings
 + colourful ads

Writing tip

It is not necessary to write full sentences in an essay plan. You can use key words, abbreviations and symbols.

A good job often means a high salary.

good job = \$\$\$

- 2 Read the writing tip. Then find abbreviations and symbols in the essay plan in exercise 1 which mean:
 - 1 equals, is the same as
 - 2 and other similar things
 - 3 advertisements
 - 4 for example
 - 5 cause, lead to
 - 6 samebody
 - 7 and

Naminal subject clauses

We sometimes emphasise particular information in a sentence by beginning with a what clause followed by be.

I'm looking for a more colourful outfit.

What I'm looking for is a more colourful outfit.
She needs a new job.

What she needs is a new job.

- 3 Read the *Learn this!* box. Find an example of a *what* clause in the essay in exercise 1.
- 4 Rewrite the sentences using nominal subject clauses starting with what.
 - 1 I prefer unusual clothes.
 - 2 I like modern architecture.
 - 3 I really hate grey tower blocks.
 - 4 We need a new attitude to urban architecture.
 - 5. It shows how important art can be.
 - 6 They're looking for a more attractive house.
 - Grøremar Builder 10.4: Nominal subject clauses: p. 127
- 5 Read the essay question below. Make a plan using the suggestions in the box below and your own ideas. Remember to use abbreviations and symbols.

In what ways can films make our lives better?

entertainment learn about the world historical films documentaries fashion and film stars ideas of the future (sci-fi) music in films

Write an essay using your plan from exercise 5. Write 200-250 words and remember to check your work for mistakes when you have finished.

LANGUAGE REVIEW 9-10

Vocabulary

1 Complete the phrases with the verbs in the box.

	afford	borrow	buy	pay	save	waste		
1 2 3 4		mone up to £20 f	go on s rom a	holid friend	hing yo ay	u'il never	use	
5 6		to bu mone			ık acco	unt		
ľV	tark	76						

- 2 Solve the anagrams to make words connected with art and performance art.
 - 1 otrrptai

4 talicer

2 hsteko

5 lomedy

3 unedeiac

6 gjuglign

Mark

/6

Grammar

3 Put the words in the correct order.

1 hair / is / black / his / Michael / dyed / having

- 2 her / has / reduced / nose / Natasha / had
- 3 living room / going / decorated / have / to / We're / our.
- 4 pierced / eyebrow / yesterday / Alisha / had / her
- 5 new TV / their / having / tomorrow / delivered / They're

Mark /5

4 Complete the text with the past or present participle form of the verbs in brackets.

Our school play was a huge success this year. The script 1______ (write) by Mr Hill, the English teacher, was really funny, and the actors, 2_____ (wear) costumes donated by the local theatre, performed reaky well. The audience joined in with all the songs * __ _ _ _ (sing) on stage and laughed at all of the jokes. The scencry, 4_______ (make) by the art department, was really beautiful, and, finally, the students 5_ _____ (play) in the band were excellent.

Mark

/5

5 Use the prompts to write sentences. Add of if necessary.

Lots of snow fell on most / towns in my area.

A few / my / friends had to walk to school.

Most / the / students arrived late.

4 None / our / teachers / could drive their cars.

5 Many / students stayed at home.

6 Every one / us expected to be sent straight home.

Mark

Everyday English

6 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

mear	point	still	strongly	suppose
2 Itak 3 Isee 4 Wha	e your <u> </u>	want.	, but I don't fee	the other hand we're brok I think it's too late now. I about it.

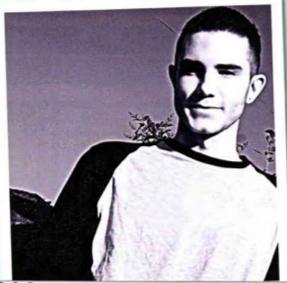
- 7 Put the lines (a-e) in the correct order to complete the dialogue.
 - a It sounds great.
 - b It was. You'll have to come with me next time.
 - c It was excellent, I loved every minute of it.
 - d Really? What was so good about it?
 - the script, the actors, the scenery. Everything, really.

Nathan	What was the play like?
Poppy	
Nathan	
Рорру	
Nathan	
Рорру	L]
Nathan	I'd love to.
Mark	/5
Tota	/381

SKILLS ROUND-UP 1-10

Reading

1 Read the e-mail and look at the photo. Why has Sarah taken this photo of Marek?





Dear Vlasta

Hif I hope you're well. I've been really busy preparing an exhibition with some other students from Art College. It's going to be a mixture of photographs, paintings and drawings connected to the themo 'Changing Britain'. I'm contributing some photos of Marek! It was difficult taking them – he hates having his photo taken!

As you probably know, Marek has found a flat and moved out of our house — at last! Actually, I really enjoyed having him here, and I miss him. But I don't think James (my boyfriend and Marek's boss) would have been very pleased if he'd stayed here much tonger. Anyway, Marek is now sharing a flat with two friends — Tom and Suzanne. Has he told you about Suzanne? He met her on a train to Edinburgh, and then humped into her again in the Princes Street Gardens at dusk. How romantic! If he hadn't sp'lt her coffse on the train, she probably wouldn't have remembered him! Now they're really close friends — or maybe more than friends. He won't tel. me! Has he told you?

I hope work is going better and you aren't feeling so tired. What you need is a holiday in England!

Love

Sarah

2 Are the sentences are true or false?

- 1 Sarah has painted some pictures for an exhibition.
- 2 James is pleased that Marek has found a flat.
- 3 There are three people living in Marek's new flat.
- 4 Sarah wants to know how Marek and Suzanne met.
- 5 Marek might be having a relationship with Suzanne.

Listening

- 3 @ 3.06 Listen. Do you think Marek and Suzanne are boyfriend and girlfriend, or just friends? Give reasons for your answers.
- 4 3.06 Listen again and choose the correct answers.
 - 1 Sarah's exhibition starts on

A Saturday, B

B Sunday.

C Monday.

2 It lasts for

A one day.

B two days. C three days.

3 Entrance to the exhibition costs

A £5.

B £2.

C nothing.

4 The venue for the exhibition is

A the town hall.

B the art college.

C a gallery in London.

5 In the entrance hall, the exhibition has

A a sculpture.

B a security camera.

C a video installation.

Speaking

- Work in pairs. You need to agree on something to do together tomorrow afternoon. (Look back at page 90, exercise 5 for phrases to help you.)
 - A You want to go to Sarah's art exhibition. Thinks of reasons why it is a good thing to do, and try to persuade B.
 - B You want to go to the cinema. Think of reasons why it is a good thing to do, and try to persuade A.

Writing

- **6** Write a short review of a film that you have seen recently. Give your opinion of:
 - the story
 - · the main actors
 - the music, costumes or special effects

- 1 Get ready to READ Look at the Reading exam task in exercise 2. What building is the text about? Where is it?
- 2 Do the Reading exam task.

READING exam task

Read the text. Six sentences have been removed from the text. Choose from sentences A-G the one that best fits each gap. There is one extra sentence that you do not need.

Opera by the bay

Sydney's rich artistic heritage is beyond doubt, stretching back to Aboriginal engravings and drawings. So it seems only litting that this city was chosen as the setting for the Australian Opera. ¹ ____ Until the 20th century this was a military site which then was used as a tram depot. As trams were phased out, the building became redundant and was demolished in 1958 to make way for the Sydney Opera House.

Eugene Goossens, who in 1946 became the resident conductor of the Sydney Symphony Orchestra, was the first to bring up the subject of building an Opera House. ² In 1956, the government announced an international competition for the design of two concert halls attracting 233 entries from all over the world. A young Danish architect, Jorn Utzon, saw the competition advertised in a Swedish architectural magazine and sent in his ten drawings. On 29 January 1957 he was declared the winner. ³ And this, unquestionably, has happened. One of the most recognisable images in the world today, the Opera House is the ultimate symbol of Sydney and Australia.

The Opera House building, its unique shape resembling a ship at full sail, graces Sydney's harbour. But it took years to construct.

* ___ The works began in 1959 and it was 1961 before Utzon worked out the problem of the roof. * ___ Utzon said of his roof the the 'interplay is so important that together with the sun, the light and the clouds, it makes a living thing. In order to express this liveliness, these roofs are covered with glazed tiles'.

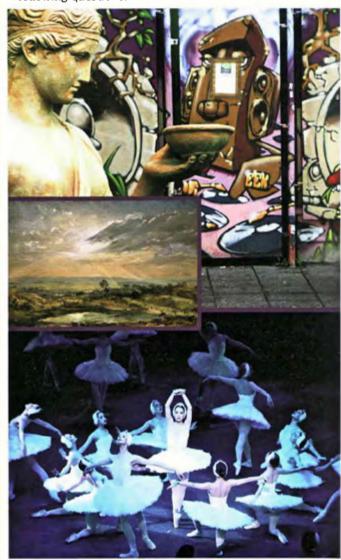
The final cost of the Sydney Opera House, excluding the organ, was \$102 million. ⁶ The Opera House has four halfs and was opened by Queen Elizabeth II on 20 October 1973.

- A The majority of the sum was raised by the specially created Opera House lottery.
- B His drawings were said to present a concept of an Opera House which was capable of becoming one of the great buildings of the world.
- C In order to do so, he drew inspiration from nature, in particular the palm loaf and the grange fruit.
- D It took over ten years for his dream to even have the chance of becoming a reality.
- E This was because, at the time of its design, the magnificent roof was, arguably, beyond the capabilities of the engineers of the time.
- F He rightly believed the project would make him rich and famous.
- G. Yet it was a long time before it became the home of music.

- 3 Look at the photos. What kinds of art are they? What adjectives would you use to describe them?
- 4 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Look at the photos, and talk about art, discussing the following questions.



- 1 How would you compare the four types of art shown in the pictures?
- 2 Who do various forms of art appeal to? Do they appeal to you? Give reasons.
- 3 Do you agree with the following statement? Art is less important in our lives today than it used to be.

- 1 Cook at the Listening exam task.
 Who are you going to hear about?
 - a an actor and a director
 - b a painter and an art dealer
 - c a model and a painter
- 2 9 3.07 Do the Listening exam task.

LISTENING exam task

You are going to hear a conversation about one of Picasso's muses, who often sat for the artist in her teens. In 1–6, choose the correct option: A, B, C or D.

- 1 Lydia Corbett
 - A used to live in the south of France.
 - 8 once visited a friend called Sylvette in France.
 - C used to live in Devon but now lives in France.
 - D became an artist's model at the age of 72.
- 2 How did Sylvette first meet Picasso?
 - A Her mother introduced her to him.
 - B Sylvette went to Picasso's studio.
 - C Picasso invited her to his house.
 - D Picasso came to her mother's house.
- 3 What was Picasso's first impression of Sylvette?
 - A She was very shy,
 - B She looked like a witch.
 - C Her hair was very messy.
 - D She was very beautiful.
- 4 As a result of that first meeting
 - A. Sylvette was fascinated by the great artist.
 - B Sylvette's boyfriend started working for Picasso.
 - C Picasso was inspired to paint a portrail.
 - D Sylvette decided to change her hairdo.
- 5 Later,
 - A Picasso taught Sylvette to paint,
 - B Sylvette and Picasso were lovers.
 - C Sylvette posed for numerous pictures.
 - D Picasso took photos of Sylvette.
- 6 What is true about Sylvette?
 - A She started painting under the name Lydia Corbett.
 - B Picasso didn't appreciate her artistic talent.
 - C She signed her pictures with various names.
 - D Her husband was an English artist.
- 3 Look quickly through the text in the Use of English exam task below, ignoring the gaps. What is it about?
 - a A robbery that has never been solved.
 - b A robbery that took years for the police to solve.
 - A carefully planned robbery which was a failure.

4 Do the Use of English exam task.

USE OF ENGLISH exam task

Read the text and fill in each gap with a suitable word. Write one word only in each gap.

The year was 1990. The robbery was deliberately planned to place on the busiest day for the police in
to place on the busiest day for the police in
Boston: 17 March, St Patrick's Day. Two men pretending to
be Boston police officers made the r 2 into
Boston's Isabella Gardner museum, fied the
security guards, and made off with thirteen pieces of art about half a billion dollars.
the stolen paintings included five by Degas,
three Rembrandts and a Manet, the canvas that is most
often mentioned the greatest loss is Vermeer's
The Concert. It is one of only 35 Vermeers '
existence and is now considered the world's most valuable.
painting ever to have a stolen.
Around twenty years later, and in spite * a
\$5 million reward, the art is still missing and the police
are no nearer to making an arrest. 15 short, the
police investigation has been a failure. In the meantime,
the Garcher museum has spent a fortune improving its
security!

Work In pairs. Discuss what benefits the visual arts (painting, sculpture, etc.) might provide for (a) the artist and (b) the viewer. Use the words in the box and your own ideas. Give examples where possible.

beauty/beautiful inspiration/inspirational original self-expression therapeutic thought-provoking

6 Do the Writing exam task,

WRITING exam task

Read the statement below. Then write 200–250 words presenting the arguments for and against the statement. Include your own opinion.

Art should be made a compulsory subject in all types of schools.

- 1 What art festivals do you know? What kind of art do they celebrate?
- 2 Do the Reading exam task.

READING exam task

Read the text. In 1-6, choose the best option: A, B, C or D.

Liverpool had done it before and really wanted to do it again. However, the Archdruid put his foot down and refused. He even went so far as to say that he would deny them his presence. Liverpool insisted. The Archdruid persisted. He believed somewhere in Wales was a more suitable choice. What was the squabble all about? The hosting of the time-honoured Welsh art festival – the National Eisteddfod of Wales.

The festival's roots can be traced back to 1176 when the first Eisteddfod (literally 'sitting' festival) is said to have been held at Lord Rhys' castle in Cardigan. It was a grand gathering of poets and musicians from all over the country with the prize of a chair at the Lord's table awarded to the best artists.

The idea caught on in no time, and the Eisteddfod became a folk tradition across Wales. However, when the Eisteddfod was officially associated with the Gorsedd of Bards at the beginning of the nineteenth century, it firmly established itself as a great artistic occasion. The Gorsedd of Bards is made up of the most distinguished Welsh artists who, to this day, participate in the festival. At their head is the Archdroid, who is responsible for conducting the ceremonies during Eisteddfod week and for choosing the venue. The ceremonies are still held to honour literary achievements amongst Welsh poets and prose writers.

Three ceremonies are held during the Eisteddfod week, the Crowning ceremony to honour the finest free verse poet, the Prose Medal ceremony and the Chairing ceremony for strict metre poetry. During the ceremonies, members of the Gorsedd of Bards gather on the Eisteddfod stage along with the Archdruid. But the indisputable highlight of the week is when the Archdruid reveals the identity of the winning poet, who is then honoured by a children's floral dance.

In its purest form an eisteddfod is simply a series of music and poetry competitions and there are hundreds of small local and school eisteddfodau (plural of eisteddfod) throughout Wales all year round. However, it is the national Eisteddfod that is the main event being held in a different spot each year and hosted by the Bards in their historic ceremonial robes. The venue turns into a vast sea of tents providing a roof for the artists and visitors who come to enjoy the performances as well as the craftsmen and traders surrounding the event.

- According to the first paragraph.
 - A Liverpool hosted the first Eisteddfad.
 - B the Archdroid thought the festival should take place in Wales.
 - C the Archdruid refused to make a choice.
 - D. Tiverpool did nor want to host the festival.
- 2 The first Eisteddfod took place
 - A in a castle.
 - B all over the country.
 - C around a large table.
 - D in a large theatre.

- 3 What is true about Eisteddfod?
 - A It quickly became very popular in Wates.
 - **B** Prominent artists did not have time for it.
 - C It became unpopular at the start of the 19th century.
 - D It was only for Lords and the wealthy.
- 4 Nowadays, Eisteddfod
 - A is held in the town of Gorsedd.
 - B has awards in two categories.
 - C includes a dance competition with flowers.
 - D is hold where the Archdruld decides.
- 5. A floral dance is held to celebrate.
 - A the victory of the winning poet.
 - B the end of the Eisteddfod week.
 - C the arrival of the Archdruid on Stage.
 - D all of the week's highlights.
- 6 The national Eisteddfod
 - A takes place at the same time as hundreds of small, local competitions.
 - B is only for artists who have already won their local eisted fod.
 - C in the most famous of many competitions which happen al. through the year.
 - D travels from one venue to another throughout the year.
- 3 Get ready to SPEAK Work in pairs. Look at the list of topics and decide how important the influence of America is to each one in your country. Give examples.

cinema television popular music classical music food in the home fast food fashion/clothes language

4 Do the Speaking exam task.

SPEAKING exam task

Read the statement below, and decide if you agree or disagree. Work in pairs. Discuss the statement, presenting your arguments, and responding to your partner's counterarguments.

Many people see the influence of American culture as a threat to their own national traditions.

- 1 Color of Look at the Listening exam task, and answer these questions.
 - 1 Which cities are you going to hear about?
 - 2 What do they have in common?
- 2 3.08 Do the Listening exam task.

LISTENING exam task

Listen to the recording about four capital cities. Match the cities to questions 1–8. Write the correct letter after each question.

D=Dublin L-London W-Washington DC C=Canberra Which city 1 has seen a lot of bloody conflicts? 2 was designed to include the green areas which were already there? 3 aims to improve its political status? 4 used to be two separate cities? 5 was chosen to settle a dispute between two other cities? 6 contains one of the largest green areas in the world? 7 was camaged extremely badly? 8 has something for those fascinated by science and technology?

3 Do the Use of English exam task.

USE OF ENGLISH exam task

Read the text and fill in each gap with a suitable word. Write one word only in each gap.

London became the administrative capital of Britain mainly because it was the largest and most important city in the country. However, before becoming capital of Spain in 1551, a large town. For Madrid was not a major city, or centuries, the capital of Spain 2_____ considered to be wherever the Spanish monarch and his court lived. For many years, Toledo was the capital and today the 'old city', 3______ its beautiful casde. and cathedral, is a World Heritage Site, 1_____ Toledo, Seville. became the next capital, another city full of beautiful — Fistone architecture. So why, in 1561, § _____ king Philip. If of Spain decide to choose Madrid '_____ the new capital? There was no cathedral there, no university, no trade - nothing of interest o____ all. Its only real quality was its location in the very centre 3_____ the country. Philip decided this was the only way he could be in a position to govern all of his kingdom. Of course, once it ic______ become the capital, Madrid grew. However, even today, Madrid is quite a small city when you compare it with other European capitals.

4 Get ready to what Look at the essay below. Complete the text with the missing phrases.

All in all As a result However
It is commonly believed Therefore What is more

As the world moves towards what is essentially a global village, the next for effective communication is stronger than ever before. '______, the number of people studying foreign languages is increasing, and the effectiveness of various language courses is becoming a vital issue. One of the questions most frequently discussed is whether or not language courses should include the study of the culture of the country where the language is spoken.

- ²______each language is deeply rooted in the culture where it operates. ³______, full understanding is often impossible without some knowledge of certain elements of its history, literature and traditions. Besides, studying cultures different from one's own increases international awareness and understanding, which in turn stimulates the language learning process.
- 1 _____, some people argue that in business contexts, the language is just a tool and, as long as both sides clearly understand the technical vocabulary they use, no cultural background is necessary.
 5______, it would be impossible to define what particular culture should be taught, as many internationally used languages are spoken in different countries whose cultures differ significantly from one another.
- 5______, it seems that the role of the cultural component in a language course should depend on the learner's goals. Those who need the language for technical or business purposes, will probably find the historical and literary elements less important than those for whom this language is something more than just a means of communication.

5 Do the Writing exam task.

WRITING exam task

Read the statement below. Write an essay in 200-250 words, discussing your views.

When studying a foreign language, it is important to learn translation skills both in writing and speaking.

GRAMMAR BUILDER AND REFERENCE

Order of adjectives

- 1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
 - 1 wearing / shoes / elegant / black / She's / high-heeled She's wearing elegant black high-heeled shoes.
 - 2 a / That's / stripy / shirt / smart / cotton
 - 3 dress / wearing / cotton / an / awful / She's / flowery
 - 4 wool / at / mini-skirt / check / Look / beautiful / that
 - 5 stripy / blue / like / your / hoody / I / baggy
 - 6 shiny / is / roll neck / great / This / nylon / a
 - 7 leggings / tight / wearing / ridiculous / She's / furry

The order of adjectives before a noun depends on their meaning.

	opinion	size	age	colour	origin	material/ type/ purpose	
а	lovely	big	old	blue	French	leather	bag
а	nice	tall	young		English		man

nesent tense contrast

- Decide if the sentences are correct or not. Correct the sentences that are incorrect.
 - The plane is taking off tomorrow moming at eight o'clock.
 - 2 It's quite warm today. I don't take a Jacket.
 - 3 What do you read at the moment?
 - 4 I live with a family in Ireland for a month.
 - 5 She's a writer so she's always working from home.
 - 6 They don't go to the party on Saturday night.
 - 7 Are you usually wearing jeans to school?
 - 8 My sister's always borrowing my clothes! It's really irritating!

2 Complete the pairs of sentences with the present simple or present continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

1	a	My cousin (live) in London. She was born there
	b	My sister (visit) her at the moment.
2		My dad (not drive) to work. He usually takes th train.
	b	Today the trains are on strike, so he (drive).
3	a	I need to translate a letteryou (speak French?
	b	Excuse me for interrupting, but what language you(speak)?
4		Paul (have) toast for breakfast today. He usually (have) cereal.
5		Where you (meet) Linda tonight? What time the film (start)?
6	a	I'm getting fed up with my boyfriend. He(alway leave) the kitchen in a mess!
	b	He (not wash) the dishes and he never clears

We use the present simple to talk about:

· habits and routines.

I usually bet up at eight piziock.

a permanent situation or fact.

Back lives in London, It's his home rown,

· timetables and schedules.

The train leaves at 5:30 temorrow morning,

Notice the third person form of the present simple,

· Add -s to the verb.

Faract. It starts.

· Add -es (after -ch, -ss, -sh or -o).

They teach. She teaches.

We don't teach. He doesn't teach.

 Take away -y, then add -ies (after verbs ending with -y after a consonant).

I study. He studies.

We use the present continuous to talk about:

things that are happening now.

We're watching a movie right now. Come river!

- annoying behaviour with always.
 He's always falking about himself.
- arrangements in the future.

Saily and Tom are lighing to Kome next Friday.

Notice how the present participle -ing is formed.

Add -ing to the verb.

I wart. She's waiting.

When verbs end with -e, take away -e then add -ing.

They entitle. We're emiling.

 When verbs have one vowel followed by -m, -g, -p or -t, double the final consonant, then add -ing.

You stop. They're stopping.

the table!

State and dynamic verbs

Complete the sentences the correct form of the verbs in the box.

	belong know not like need rain not remember
	wait want
1	Sorry, I your name.
2	Tom's shoes are worn out. He some new ones.
3	Jason dancing very much.
4	It and I haven't got an umbrella.
5	Those trainers
6	you where my dictionary is?
7	'Where are you?' 'We for the bus.'
8	I'm tired and I to go home now.
€	hoose the correct words.
1	I enjoy / 'm enjoying this party.

- 2

 - 2 She thinks / 's thinking you're right.
 - 3 Jack has / 's having a shower.
 - 4 I feel / 'm feeling stupid in this skirt.
 - 5 They consider / 're considering moving house.
 - 6 I forget / 'm forgetting people's names very easily.
- 3 Complete the pairs of sentences with the present simple or present continuous form of the 'state' verbs.

1	smell
	a What are you cooking? It delicious!
	b Ryan all the perfunte samples to try and
	find the right one for his girlfriend.
2	look
	a That dress nice. Where did you buy it?
	b Can you help me? I for a denim jacket.
3	taste
	a This meat a bit strange. Is it OK?
	b 'What are you doing?' 'I the sauce to
	make sure it has enough salt."
4	feel
	a Your shirt really smooth is it cotton?

Dynamic verbs are verbs that describe actions. They can be used in simple and continuous forms.

Loun for Wildmotres every day. for running in a rose of the moment,

isn't broken.

Verbs that describe a state or situation are not usually used in continuous tenses.

b The doctor _____ my brother's leg to make sure it

I don't understand you. (a state of mind)

NOT the you understanding you.

The book briongs to rie. (a possession)

NOT finis becoke is beforeding to one

Common state verbs:

enjoy like love hate prefer understand believe remember forget want need belong

Be careful. Sometimes, state verbs can be used with a 'dynamic' meaning.

This chases lastes rice, (a 'state' of the cheese). im tasting cheese at the mousem. (an action)

Verb patterns

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
 - They agreed _____ (not spend) al. their money.
 - 2 Kate can't face _____ (go) to the gym tonight.
 - 3 She pretended ._____ (not see) me.
 - 4 My parents refuse ____ __ (buy) me a motorbike.
 - 5 I fee. like _____ (eat) out tonight.
 - 6 He suggested _____ (do) more exercise.
 - 7 They hope ______ (not arrive) late for the play.
 - 8 We avoid _____ (drive) in the city centre at the weekend.

Some verbs are followed by an ir finitive.

Connimanaged to firreb his nomework.

Some verbs are followed by the -ing form.

Sally foncied oning away for the weekend.

verb + infinitive	verb + ang form
agree	avoid
decide	can't face
expect	can't help
tail	can't stand
happen	enjoy
hope	fancy
manage	feel like
mean	imagine
pretend	spend (time)
promise	suggest
refuse	
seem	
want	

Note that like, love, prefer and hate can be followed by the infinitive or the -ing form without changing the meaning.

I nate to ost up early: Unate gertino, oplearly,

Verbs that change their meaning

1	Complete the dialogue with the correct form of	the verbs in
	brackets.	

A	Why	are	уоц	walking	like	that.	Brian?
---	-----	-----	-----	---------	------	-------	--------

- B I've been playing football and I've hurt my leg.
- A I thought you'd stopped I ____ (play) football!
- B No. Fonly stopped 2______ (study) for my exams.
- A Oh, I see. Have you tried 1_____ (take) a painkiller?
- B Yes, but it still hurts.
- A Poor you! Are you going to be OK for Mum's birthday?
- B | I think so. Did you remember 2 (make) a cake?
- A Yes, I made the cake. But I forgot 1. _____ (buy) any champagne. Can you get some?
- B OK. I'll try 6______ (get) some on the way to the party. I'm looking forward to it!
- A Me too. I'll never forget 7_____ (dance) with Dad last year. He really enjoyed it. And I've bought Mum a really nice blouse for her birthday.
- B Again?
- A Sorry?
- B Don't you remember 8_____ (give) her that plnk shiny one last year?
- A. Oh no, you're right! I've just got time to change it! Bye!

Some verbs change their meaning depending on whether they are followed by an infinitive or the -ing form.

I remember living in Paris when I was young.

Meaning: this is a memory in which 'living' happened before 'remember'.

Did you remember to phone Jerny?

Meaning: this is an action that needed doing - 'remember' happened before 'to phone'.

Minever forget swimming with all those snarks.

Meaning: this is a memory in which 'swimming' happened before 'forget'.

Patrick forgot to go to football practice.

Meaning: this is an action that needed doing - 'forgot' happened before 'to go'.

Meace stop talking!

Meaning: end this action.

Karen stopped to ask for directions.

Meaning: stop in order to do something else.

Sarph went on writing non-novel.

Meaning: continued doing it.

Jee went on to record another rock album.

Meaning: did something else later.

We tered hilling I with a hammer but we couldn't open it.

Meaning: did it in order to solve a problem.

Sophie tried to save some money but she spent it all.

Meaning: attempted it/did her best.

Past tenses

1	Complete the sentences with the past simple or the past
	continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

	will (break) his teg while he (blay) football.
2	The sun (shine) so we (decide) to go to the
	beach.
3	We (have) dinner when we (get) home.
ŧ	She (wait) for the train when she (see) her
	boyfriend with another girl.
5	I (listen) to my MP3 player, so I (not hear) the
	phone.

2 Combine the sentences. Use the words in brackets and both the past simple and the past perfect.

6 It was difficult to see because it ______ (get) dark.

- Pete broke the television. Dad shouted at him (because) Dad shoured at Pete because he had proken the television.
- 2 Kate played football. Then she had a shower. (after)
- 3 We forgot to water the plants. They died. (because) The plants_
- 4 We did our homework. We went out. (after) 5 Host my mobile phone. I bought a new one. (because)
- 6 They didn't buy any petrol. Their car stopped. (because)
- Their car
- 7 Heft the house. Then I locked the door, (after)

We use past tenses to narrate past events.

We use the past continuous to set the scene.

The birds were singing in the trees that morning,

 We use the past simple for actions or events that happened. one after the other.

Joanna walked down the road, turned left, then saw the house for the last

 We use the past continuous to describe a background event. and the past simple to describe an action or event that interrupted it.

While we were staying at the campsite, somebody stole Fiona's camera.

 We use the past perfect to talk about an event that happened before another event in the past.

I wasn't hungry because I had already eaten lunch:

Notice that with regular verbs the past simple and the past participle form of the past perfect are the same.

It crashed. It had crashed.

However, with irregular verbs the past simple and the past participle form of the past perfect are often different.

He'd already seen me,

(There is a list of irregular past simple forms and past participle forms on page 120 of the Workbook.)

used to

1 Make questions. Use the prompts and phrases in the box and used to.

when it was your birthday? before they got married? before you started school? before you went to bod? when you were a child? where you could play? when you got up? at the weekend?

- 1 you / eat vegetables
 Did you use to get vegetables when you were a child?
- 2 What / your grandparents / give you
- 3 there / be / a park / near your house
- 4 Where / your parents / live
- 5 you / watch TV / on Saturday mornings
- 6 Who / your family / visit
- 7 your mother / read to you
- 8 you / get up early
- 2 Complete the sentences. Use the affirmative or negative form of used to and the verbs in brackets.
 - 1 Mia used to 40 (go) to my school, but now she doesn't.
 - 2 Aidan _____ (be) very tall, but now he is.
 - 3 Ali _____ (work) in a factory, but she doesn't now.
 - 4 We ______ (play) football at the weekend, but now we don't.
 - There ______ (be) a market every Friday, but now there Isn't.
 - 6 They _____ (wear) a uniform to school, but now they do.
 - 7 Christopher _____ (drink) coffee, but now he does.

We use used to + infinitive to describe past situations or habits that are different now.

Lucad to live abroad. (for a long time in the past but not now) Lucad to work in a newspaper shop at weekends. (regularly in the past but not now)

Affirmative	Negative	Question form
Saily used to live	Sally didn't use to	Did Sally use to
in Scotland.	live in England.	live in Ireland?

23 Exclamatory sentences

- 1 Choose the correct words.
 - Someone stole my wallet yesterday.
 What / How a nightmare!
 - 2 My aunt was rushed to hospital last night. What / How terrible!
 - 3 I thought someone had broken into my house! What / How a shock!
 - 4 Sharon was wearing the same party dress as me! What / How funny!
 - 5 My parents are going to pay for my holiday! What / How wonderful!
 - 6 Why don't we organise an end-of-term trip? What / How a great idea!
 - 7 Our flight to New York has been cancelled! What / How a pain!
 - 8 My mobile keeps ringing at three o'clock every night.
 What / How strange!

We use exclamatory sentences beginning with What or How to react strongly to something. They always end with an exclamation mark.

- We use How with an adjective.
 - tiow wordsmidt
- We use What with a noun or an adjective followed by a noun. Notice that we say What a ... with a countable noun and What ... with plural or uncountable nouns.

What a day! What a lovely person! What wooderful weather-

3.1 Defining relative clauses

- 1 Choose the correct words.
 - 1 He's the man who / which interviewed me for the job.
 - 2 That's the hospital where / whose my sister works.
 - 3 She works as part of a team where / which is in Paris.
 - 4 Gina's the planist who / whose accompanies the show.
 - 5 They're the neighbours who / whose car was stolen.
 - 6 That's the woman whose / who is in charge of paying the salaries.
 - 7 A laboratory is which / where scientists work.
 - 8 Unskilled work is work which / who requires no training.



2 Complete the sentences with relative clauses using the phrases in the box.

they repair bloycles it makes furniture they play jazz my brother works there there are a lot of parks there his job is similar to a doctor's his classes are so interesting the new hospital will be there

1	They work on the building site where the new hospital will be
2	A paramedic is a person
3	Tom works for a design company
4	We live in a district
5	They're looking for musicians
6	Do you know any machanics

Defining relative clauses come immediately after a noun and give vital information about that noun.

He's the doctor, (Which doctor?)
He's the doctor who helped my grandmother

They can go in the middle or at the end of sentences.
The man who told me about this place was old

I met the young woman who cuts your hair.

Defining relative pronouns are different depending on whether they refer to people, places, things or possessions.

Defining relative pronouns		
who (that)	people	
where	places	
which (that)	things	
whose	possessions	

Who or which can replace the subject or object of a sentence. When they replace the object, it is possible to omit who or which.

She's the girl who works here. (subject) She's the girl who I met. (object) She's the girl I saw on the bus. (omission)

We often use that instead of which, and can use that instead of who in informal English.

Here's the book **that** you wanted... Did you see the out **that** kissed Mary?

😥 Non-defining relative clauses

- Rewrite the sentences. Use the sentences in brackets to form non-defining relative clauses.
 - 1 My sister works in the local hospital. (She's a nurse.) My sisted, who's a nurse, works in the local nospital.
 - 2 My dog's vet is very good with animals. (Her surgery is very near.)
 - 3 Stockholm is the capital of Sweden. (It's in Scandinavia.)
 - 4 Martin Scorsese received an Oscar in 2007. (His films include *Taxi Driver* and *Raging Bull.*)
 - 5 Next month we're going to Cardiff. (My uncle lives there.)
 - 6 The headmaster is retiring. (I've known him for several years.)
- 2 invent relative clauses to complete the sentences. Use the questions to help you.
 - 1 Shakespeare, who wrote 'Pomeo and Julies', was born in Stratford upon Avon. (What did Shakespeare write?)
 - 2 Switzerland, _______, is in Central Europe, (What's Switzerland famous for?)
 - 3 Feta cheese, ______, is delicious in salads. (Where is Feta produced?)
 - 4 Nicole Kidman, ______, was born in Hawaii. (Who is her ex-husband?)
 - 5 The White House, ______, has 132 rooms and 35 bathrooms. (Who lives there?)
 - 6 Jennifer López, ______, was born in New York, (What does she do?)

Non-defining relative clauses come immediately after a noun and give extra information about that noun.

Harrieda is a famous department store.

Anything else?

Harrods, which is in Knightsbridge in London, is a famous department store.

Q is a magazine about pop music

Anything else?

Q, which is published monthly, as a magazine about pop music.

They can go in the middle or at the end of sentences, and start with a comma and end with a comma or full stop.

Abraham Lincoln, who was president of the United States in the nineteenth century, was shot while he was attending a play.

Kingston is the capital of Camaica, which is an island in the Caribbean.

Non-defining relative pronouns are different depending on whether they refer to people, places, things or possessions.

Non-defining relative pronouns		
who	people	
where	places	
which	things	
whose	possessions	

We cannot omit non-defining relative pronouns, and we cannot replace who or which with that.

Past simple and present perfect

1	Complete the dialogue with the present perfect form of the
	verbs in brackets.

Nick	Hello Linda!
Linda	Nick! 1 (not see) you for ages! How are you?
Nick	Not bac at all! What are you doing in London?
Linda	i ² (move) to London to live with my boyfriend. We want to buy a house, but we ³ (not find) one yet. What about you?
Nick	1' (come) to visit an old school friend. Do you remember Chris?
Linda	Yes, I remember him.
Nick	Well he 5. (just get) married, and he wanted to show me the wedding photos.
Linda	Nick, you're looking really good! 6(lose) weight?
Nick	Yes, I have. And you ((change) your hair. It looks great!
Linda	Thanks. We should catch up sometime.
Nick	Good idea. I'd like that.

2 Complete the sentences with the past simple or present perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

Pе	errect form of the verus in brackets.
1	Leah and Tom (move) house a year ago.
2	We (know) each other since we were children
3	So far I (not fail) any of my exams.
4	My little sister (be born) in 1999.
5	Grace (break) her leg last week.
6	They (not go) to school yesterday.
7	you(finish) your homework yet?
8	Rhys had dinner and then he (go) to bed.

We use the past simple to talk about:

· completed events in the past.

I visited my aught bar weekend,

We use the present perfect to talk about:

how long current situations have existed.

I've been at this school for six years.

 experiences in the past (when the exact time is not important).

Mill biblier ibas met Bhad Pitt.

· events that are connected with the present.

Eve lost my watch. Have you seen it? Tane has already done her homework. Here it is.

Notice that we often use finished past time expressions with the past simple (*yesterday*, three months ago, last week, in 1999), but unfinished past time expressions with the present perfect (for, since, already, just, yet).

I went to Paris in 2006. I haven't been to Paris yet. She's been hero ance Tuesday.

1 cut

We form the present perfect with *have/has* + the past participle.

(There is a list of irregular past simple forms and past participle forms on page 120 of the Workbook.)

Present perfect simple and present perfect continuous

1	Complete the pairs of sentences with the present perfect
	simple and the present perfect continuous form of the verbs

	a Sarah needs a plaster because she her hand.
	b Dad's crying because he onions.
2	watch
	a We a new series on TV. It's great!
	b you a live football match before?
3	tídy
	a I my room, but there's still a lot to do.
	b jack his room. It looks much better.
4	read
	a Clare that book four times.
	b 1 the latest Harry Potter book all day. I'm
	dying to know what happens in the end!
5	run
	a Margaret never in the Lor don
	marathon before.
	b Larry is red in the face because he
6	study
	a Jimmy can go out when hefor the exam.
	b Kim's in her room. She all day.



the car! (crash).

2	Complete the sentences with the present perfect simple or
	the present perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

1 I'm sq soray! I ____ iust ...

	1101
2	The ground is wet because it (rain)
3	a well-known actor? (meet)
	1 never why you're going out with Alfie.
	(understand)
5	Something smells good! you? (cook)
	We painting the house. After lunch we're going to
	do the living room. (not finish)
7	How exciting! I always to go to Rome!
	(want)
8	Where is your homework? Don't tell me you again
	(not do)

We use the present perfect continuous to talk about:

- an action that began in the past and is still in progress.
 Ever been working for this company since 2002.
- an action that has recently stopped and which explains the present situation.

David has been playing tenn's so he's really fired.

Notice that we only use the present perfect continuous with actions which happen over a period of time. With finished and complete actions we use the present perfect simple.

We have been living in London for twelve years.

(We're still there now.)

They've lived in Moscow, Burlin and Madrid.

(They aren't there now.)

We often use the present perfect continuous with how long. If we ask how often or how much/many we use the present perfect simple.

How long has she been sleeping? How often have you worn that suit? How many English lessons have you kad?

We form the present perfect continuous with have/has + been + the -ing form.

5.1) Zero conditional

- Use the prompts to make zero conditional sentences.
 - 1 you / not use / sun cream / you / get burnt
 - 2 the beaches / be full / you / go / on holiday / in August
 - 3 I / understand / my English teacher / she / speak / slowly
 - 4 1 / not put away / my clothes / my mum / get angry
 - 5 1 / eat / too much / my stomach / hurt
 - 6 Matt / take / his medicine / he / not cough

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

	us	e	switc	h off	not have	crash	discover	give
1	LIfy	10	ur com	puter		, уоц са	n call the h	otline,
2	2 If a	an	yone _		your p	assword	, you shou	ld change it.
- 3	if y	10	u pres	s that	button, the	e monito	r	_,
1	Yo	u	can		the Inte	met if yo	ou have a r	outer.
5	if i	_		yo	u my addre	ess, you	can send π	ne an e-mail.
6	YD	ш	can't d	lownlo	oad music	if you	br	oadband.

We use the zero conditional to say that one thing follows automatically or naturally from another.

If you press the button, the machine comes on.
If you eat too much chocolate, you feel ill.

We form the zero conditional by using the present simple in both the conditional if clause and result clause.

Conditional clause	Result clause
If you don't wear socks,	your feet get cold.
(present simple)	(present simple)

5.2 Speculating and predicting

- Write sentences using will, may, might not or won't and the prompts.
 - Perhaps / it / rain this afternoon.
 It may main this afternoon.
 - 2 I'm sure / we / not win the match tonight We
 - 3 Perhaps / Chris / not be at home right now Chris
 - 4 Perhaps / Abigail / know the answer to the homework Abigall ______
 - 5 I'm sure / 1 / pass my driving test first time
 - 6 Perhaps / Megan / not come to our party
 Megan
 - 7 I'm sure / my parents / pay for my holiday
 My parents _____



2 Complete the first conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1	If the bus	(not come) soor	٦,١
		(be) late for school.	
2	We	(go) for a picnic at the	weekend if it
		(not rain).	
3	My parents	(be) upset if I	
	(not pass) my ex	xams.	
4	J=	(not go) to the party if I	
	(not get) an invi	tation.	
5	If I	(get) a job I	(mave) or
	of my parents' h	iduse.	
6	They	(not win) the match	if they
		(not play) better.	
7	She	(not buy) him a new p	phone if he
		(lose) this one.	
8	Не	(make) me really happ	y if he
		(send) me some roses.	

We use the first conditional to make predictions about the future.

If global wavening gets much worse, the climate will change.

We form the first conditional by using the present simple in the conditional *if* clause and *will* + base form in the result clause.

Conditional clause	Result clause
If scientists cure disease,	people will live very long lives.
(present simple)	(will + base form)

The conditional *if* clause usually comes first, but it can come after the result clause.

Many people will have nowhere to live it the sea levels rise.

The modal verbs may, might and could can be used instead of will or won't in the result clause.

We may experience very hot summers in Europe if we don't do anything about global warming.

53 Future perfect and future continuous

- Complete the sentences with the future perfect or the future continuous form of the verbs in brackets.
 My driving test is on 3 March. (have)
 By April I will have had my driving test.

2 My brother is starting work on 5 September. (start)

- 5 Our plane lands in New York at 10 o'clock. (land)
 At 10 o'clock we _____
- 7 My sister is getting married in October. (get married)
 By November she
- 2 Complete the sentences with the future perfect or future continuous form of the verbs in brackets.
 - 1 I _____ (read) your book by the end of the week.
 - 2 We always have dinner at eight o'clock, so we ________ (finish) if you come round at nine o'clock.
 - 3 My cousins ______ (sit) on the plane to Australia this time tomorrow.
 - 4 You'll recognise her because she _____ (wear) a bright yellow hoody.
 - 5 We _____ (wait) for you when you arrive at the station.
 - 6 Thope he ______ (Find) a job by the end of the month.

We use the future perfect to refer back from a future point in time to a completed action also in the future.

X X? X NOW hotel built 2015
By 2015, we will have built a hotel on the moon.

We use the future continuous to talk about an action in progress at a time in the future.

NOW 2016 living on moon in 2016, we will be living on fire moon.

We form the future perfect with will + have + the past

By Friday afternoon, we will have finished an the exame.

(There is a list of past participle forms on page 120 of the Workbook.)

We form the future continuous with will + be + -ing form of a verb.

This time next month, , will be sitting on a beach.

5.4 will, going to and present continuous

- 1 Choose the correct words.
 - 1 My foot hurts, so I'll go / I'm going to the doctor's this evening.
 - 2 Our car is really old, so we'll buy / we're going to buy a new one.
 - 3 Let's go to the cinema tonight. I'll meet / I'm meeting you outside at eight o'clock.
 - 4 I'll play / I'm playing tennis with John this afternoon, so I'd better take my tennis racket.
 - 5 Harry 'll get up / 's going to get up early tomorrow to study for the exam.
 - 6 Pil call / I'm calling you later about Saturday night.
 - 7 They can't come to my party because they're flying / they'll fly to Paris that weekend.
 - 8 I'm going / I'll go to the hairdresser's tomorrow at 5.15.

We use will + infinitive for things we decide to do as we are speaking (instant decisions, offers, promises).

Bye John, PU call you fater; That looks heavy, Pil help you carry it.

We use *going to* + infinitive for things we have already decided to do before speaking (intentions).

Eve arready decided on Tim's birthday present. Em going to get frim a new mobile phone.

We use the present continuous for things we have already agreed to do, usually with somebody else (arrangements). We've broked the flight. We've flying to Barbados in February.

5.5 Future time clauses

- 1 Join the two sentences with when.
 - I'll get home. I'll call you.
 I'll call you when I get home.
 - 2 Liz will arrive. She'll tell us her news.
 - 3 I'll go on holiday. I'll send you a postcard.
 - 4 He'll get up. He'll have a shower.
 - 5 We'll go shopping. We'll pick up some bread.
 - 6 I'll get pald. I'll give you the money.
 - 7 It'll stop raining. We'll go out.

2	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in
	brackets.

I	I the windows before I the house.
	(close / leave)
2	Sophie us as soon as she
	(tell / arrive)
3	We here.
	(not start / get)
4	I you know the moment I my result:
	(let / get)
5	Ruby her boyfriend while he away.
	(miss / be)
4	I home when I 21 (leave (ha)

In future time clauses with when, while, before, until, as soon as and the moment, we normally use the present simple, not will.

I'll phone you when Peter arrives.

Sue will be doing her homework while we're at the party.

I'll go and get some populars before the film starts.

We won't make coffee until From a sets here.

They'll go home as soon as the match finishes.

Paula will kess tom the moment he walks through the door.

6.1 must have, might have, can't have

- 1 Use the prompts to make sentences with must have, might have and can't have.
 - The thief / might / enter / through the back door.
 The thief might have entered through the back door.
 - 2 He / can't / have / a key.
 - 3 He / might / find / an open window.
 - 4 He / must / be / very quick.
 - 5 The neighbours / can't / see / him.
 - 6 The family / must / go / out.
 - 7 He / might / escape / through the garden.
- Rewrite the sentences using must have, might have or can't have.
 - I'm sure Millie gave out the invitations.
 Millie must have given out the invitations.
 - 2 Perhaps Elizabeth went to the doctor's.
 - 3 I'm sure Amelia didn't forget about the party.
 - 4 Perhaps Tyler went on holiday.
 - 5 I'm sure Archie missed the train.
 - 6 Perhaps Alex fell off his bike.
 - 7 I'm sure Amy didn't get lost.

We use must have, might have and can't have to speculate about past events.

We use *must have* to say that it seems certain that something that happened in the past is true.

The only place I haven't looked for my vegs is the car. I **must have** lest them there.

We use can't have to say that it seems impossible that something that happened in the past is true. It has the opposite meaning to must have.

Eve directors, the way — under the seals and everywhere. You can't have less your keys there.

We use *might have* to say that it seems **possible** that something that happened in the past is true.

Purhaya they're at home, I might have left my keys at home.

We can use may have and could have with similar meanings to might have.

I don't know where the keys are, I could have dropped from. I may have left them in the cestaurant.

We form these structures with a modal verb (must, con't, might, may, could) + have + the past participle.

🔂 Reported speech (statements)

- Complete the sentences in reported speech.
 - 1 'We saw a strange man in the garden,' they told their son. They told their son that _______ a strange man in the garden.
 - 2 They told him, 'We've never seen anyone there before.'
 They told him that _______ anyone there before.
 - 3 They said, 'We didn't go out last night.'
 - They said that ______ the night before.
 - 4 They said, 'We're thinking of calling the police.'

 They said that _______ of calling the police.
 - 5 The woman said, 'I'll call them in the morning.'
 The woman said that ______ them in the morning.
 - 6 Their son said, 'I can explain everything.'
 - Their son said that ______everything,
 - 7 He said, 'I often forget my key.'
 - He said that ______ his key.
 - 8 'I climbed up the drainpipe,' he told them.

 He told them that ______ up the drainpipe.
- 2 Complete the reported speech with the correct time expressions.
 - "We're staying in tonight," said Emily.
 Emily said that they were staying in _______
 - 2 'We've been out all day today,' she said. She said that they had been out all day ______
 - 3 'We're going on holiday next week,' she said.
 She said that they were going on holiday _______.
 - 4 'We went to work yesterday,' she said.

 She said that they had been to work ______.

- 5 "We didn't go out very much last month," she said.

 She said they hadn't been out very much.
- 3 Rewrite what Emma says using the correct time expressions.



- 1. We nearly moved house last year.
 - 2 Last month we bought a new house.
- 3 We packed our books into boxes yesterday.
 - 4 Today we're moving the furniture.
- 5 Tonight we're sleeping in our new bedroom.
 - 6 We're having a house-warming party next week.
- 1 Emma said that they had treach moved the year before.
- 2 Emma said that _____
- 3 She said
- 4 5he _____
- 5 __
- 6 -
- 4 Complete the sentences with said or told.
 - 1 He ______ his girtfriend that he had bought a ring.
 - 2 She _____ him that she didn't like it.
 - 3 He ______ that it had cost a fortune.
 - 4 She _____ him that she didn't care.
 - 5 He _____ her that he would change it.
 - 6 She . _ . that she wanted diamonds.

We use reported speech to report what someone has said without using their exact words.

When we change direct speech to reported speech, we often make the verb form go one tense back.

Tom lives in Germany, said Claire. Claire said that Tom lived in Germany.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present continuous →	Past continuous
'She's sleeping,' he said.	He said she was sleeping.
Past simple →	Past perfect
'He fell over,' he said.	He said he had fallen over.
Present perfect →	Past perfect
'They've lost their money,' he said.	He said they had lost their money.
can →	could
'She can swim,' he said.	He said she could swim.
will →	would
They will be late,' he said.	He said they would be late.

· The pronouns often change.

Tim tired," ship said,

The said she was fired. (1 → he/she)

'We're upset,' they said.

They said they were upset. (we -- they)

You're late, he said.

tle said I was late. (you > 1)

· Time expressions often change.

I saw Ton yesterday.

the said he had seen from the day before.

Direct speech	Reported speech
today	that day
tonight	that night
next week	the next week
yesterday	the day before
last month/year	the month/year before

Reported speech (questions)

1 Co	mplete the	reported	questions	with the	correct	pronouns
-------------	------------	----------	-----------	----------	---------	----------

1	Where have you been?" our parents asked us	ò
	asked where had been.	

- 2 'What time did you arrive home?' my dad asked me. _____asked _____ what time _____ had arrived home.
- 3 'Did you see the thief?' the policewoman asked Jack.
 _____ asked _____ if _____ had seen the thief.
- 4 'What did he take?' we asked our mum.
- _____ asked _____ what ____ had taken.

 5 "Why have you go! my camcorder?" Dad asked Jack,
- _____ asked ____ why ____ had his camcorder.
 6 'Did you forget about our play?' we asked everybody.
- asked if had forgotten about their play.

2 Report the questions.

- 1 'What did you see?' John asked Emma.
- 2 'Will you clean my room?' Sean asked his mum.
- 3 'have you done your homework?' Amy's dad asked.
- 4 "Where are you going?" Megan asked Joe.
- 5 'Do you like jazz?' Lily asked Robert.
- 6 'Can you help me?' Oscar asked Katie.

When we change direct questions to reported questions, the verb form often goes one tense back, pronouns change, and time expressions often change.

"Did you see the football match yesterday?"
She asked me if I had seen the football match the day before.

We use the reporting verb ask when reporting questions. In yes/no questions, we use the structure '(somebody) asked (me/him/them/etc.) If...'

'Did you go out?'

She asked me if I ned gone out,

In wh- questions, we use the structure '(samebody) asked (me/him/them/etc.) + question word (where, what, how, etc.)...'

Where did you go?"

She asked me where I had gone.

Notice that in a reported question the subject comes before the verb, and auxiliary verbs like do or did are not used.

'What do you like?'

She asked me what I liked

Verbs with two objects

- 1 Rewrite the sentences with the indirect object as a pronoun. Do not use to or for.
 - 1 Mia's boyfriend made dinner for Mia last night. Mis's boyfojand made irac dinger last night.
 - Tom's mum bought a new shirt for Tom.
 - 3 Daisy owes £50 to her dad.
 - 4 Beth's neighbour sold his car to Beth.
 - 5 Patrick wrote a letter to his sister.
 - 6 Scott sent a text message to Julie.
 - 7 Dad booked a flight to Paris for us.

Some verbs can be followed by both an Indirect object. (usually a person) and a direct object (usually a thing).

[indirect object]

[direct object]

Peter gava

Penelope

his keys.

If we want the direct object to come first, we must put to or for before the indirect object.

[direct object]

[indlrect object]

Roter gave

his Keys

dimer

in Penelope.

[direct object]

[indirect object]

Pide, cockea

for Periclope

Notice that English avoids having a pronoun as a direct object at the end of the sentence.

Yelen have them to Sally. NOT Peter gave Sally them

Comparison

- Correct the sentences.
 - 1 I think my friend is prettyer than me.
 - 2 But I'm more tall than she is.
 - 3 She's got longest hair than mc.
 - 4 My eyes are beautifuller, though.
 - 5 I'm not as slim than her.
 - 6 My legs are longer that hers,
 - 7 She's the goodest student in the class.
 - 8 I'm funniest person in the class.
- 2 Rewrite the sentences using less or least.
 - 1 Shannon and Jade are more popular than Leah. Leah is ______ of the three girls. 2 Leah is more intelligent than Shannon. Shannon _____
 - 3 Jade is more hard-working than Leah.
 - Leah is _______ Jade,
 - 4 Joshua and James are more confident than Callum. Callium is _______ of the three boys.
 - 5 Callum is more polite than James.

James is ______Ca`lum.

6 James and Callum are more generous than Joshua. Joshua is ______ _____ of the three boys.

- 3 Use the prompts to make comparative sentences with than.
 - 1 Ellie / arrives / early / Jessica.
 - 2 Vicky / writes / neatly / Lewis.
 - 3 Alex / does the science experiments / well / Isabella.
 - 4 Michael / sits / quietly / Brandon.
 - 5 Abigail / speaks / softly / Lauren.
 - 6 Ella / shouts / loadly / Grace.
- 4 Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adverbs in brackets.

1 Of all our class David studies ______ $_{\perp}$ (hard).

- 2 Hally finishes exams ______ (quick).
- 3 Alfie runs the 100 metres ______ (fast). 4 Jacob always gets up ______ (late). He's so lazy.
- 5 Bethany speaks ______ (clearly) of all of us.
- 6 Finlay sings ______ (beautifully).
- 5 Put the words in the correct order to make comparative sentences.
 - 1 used to / than / confident / be / she / She's / more
 - 2 last week / was / is / That shirt / than / it / cheaper now
 - 3 was little / he was / as / not / He's / when he / fat as
 - 4 faster / drive / used to / than / you / You / now
 - 5 we did / further / We live / than / from the centre / before
 - 6 than / at school / We arrive / do / our friencs / earlier

The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives and adverbs with one syllable are formed by adding error est. The same is true of adjectives with two syllables ending in -y.

subject + verb	comparative form		object
J ohn i s	old (+ er) older		
	slim (+ m + er) slimmer		
	busy (y + ier) busier	than	Sue.
John runs	fast + er faster		

subject + verb	superlative form
John is	(the) + old (+ est) the oldest
	(the) + slim (+ m + est) the slimmest
	(the) + busy (y + lest) the busiest
John runs	(the) + fast (+ est) the fastest

The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives and adverbs with two syllables or more are formed by putting *more* or the *most* before the adjective or adverb.

subject + verb	comparative form		object
John is	more + famous more famous		Sue.
	more + popular more popular	than	
John talks	more + clearly more clearly		

noun	superlative form
John is	(the) + most + popular the most popular
john talks	(the) + most + clearly the most clearly

We can also form comparatives and superlatives of adjectives and adverbs with less and the least.

Less is the opposite of more. Least is the opposite of most.

subject + verb	comparative form		object
Sue is	less + slim less slim		John.
	less + famous less famous	than	
Sue talks	less + clearly less clearly		

subject + verb	superlative form
Sue is	(the) + least + popular the least popular
Sue talks	(the) + least + clearly the least clearly

We can make comparisons with clauses as well as nouns.
Peter is tailer than he used to be.

We often use a superlative with the present perfect and ever.

It was the best holiday we've even had

We can compare two things, using as ... as to say that they are the same.

Jill is as old as Julie.

Remember irregular comparative and superlative forms.

adjective	comparative	superlative
good	better	the best
bad	WOISP	the worst
far	further	the furthest

2 Second conditional

1	Complete the second conditional sentences with the correct
	form of the verbs in brackets.

1	If my boyfriend (go out) with another girl, I
	(not talk) to him again.
2	I (not chat up) a boy if I (not fancy)
	him.
3	If my girlfriend (not like) my friends, I
	(stop) seeing her.
4	1 (not go out) with my best friend's brother if h
	(ask) me.
5	1 (try) speed dating if I (know) when
	to go.
6	If she (split up) with her boyfriend, she
	(be) really upset.
7	Their parents (be) really happy if they
	(get engaged).

8 If Charlie _____ (get) a job in another city, Chloc

_____ (go) with him.

We use the second conditional to talk about an imaginary situation or event, and its result.

If I had a billion dollars, I'd live on a desert island,

We form the second conditional by using the past simple in the conditional if clause and would + base form in the result clause.

Conditional clause	Result clause
If I had a billion dollars, (past simple)	I would buy a castle. (would + base form)

Notice that you can use were instead of was in the conditional clause with I, he and she. Both was and were are generally acceptable, although using were is considered more correct, especially in formal situations.

If I were you, I'd give the money to charity. If he were older, ne'd understand what I'm saying,

📧 I wish, If only, I'd rather

- Complete the sentences about imaginary situations.
 - 1 | I haven't got a boyfriend. If only ! had a boyfriend!
 - 2 I live in a small flat.
 - If only ______in a bigger flat.
 - 3 I can't find a job.
 - | wish | ______a job.
 - 4 Please don't call me any more.
 - I'd rather ______ me any more. 5 Please stop complaining all the time.
 - I wish ______ complaining all the time.
 - 6 My boyfriend's moving to another city. If only _____ moving away.
 - 7 Please don't smoke in my room.
 - I'd rather ______smoke in my room.
 - 8 I can't stand it when you borrow my clothes. I wish ______ my clothes.
 - I'd prefer to have dinner at home tonight.
 - I'd rather ______ at home tonight.

We use I wish ... or If only ... with the past simple to say that we really want a situation to be different.

Uwish it were Standay. If only I had more money.

We use I wish ... or If only ... with would + base form to say that we really want somebody's (or something's) behaviour to be different.

I wish you wouldn't smoke. I wish this machine would work.

We use I'd rather with a base form to express a preference. 'Do you want a cup of tea?' 'Ud cather have a coffee.'

We use I'd rather with the past simple to say that we really want somebody's (or something's) behaviour to be different.

I'd rather you didn't leave your bag there,

Question tags

- 1 Add question tags to the statements.
 - 1 You're going out with Luke, _____?
 - 2 They've split up, _____?
 3 Ryan asked you out, _____?
 - 4 You wouldn't prefer to eat out, _____?
 - 5 Adam really looks down on his sister, _____
 - 6 You fancy Cameron, _____?

 - 7 You won't tell anyone, _____?
 - 8 Sam can't dance, _____?

We use question tags when we want somebody to confirm something that we are saying. A statement with a question tag often sounds more polite than a direct question or a plain statement.

You have a brother and a sister, don't you?

When the main verb is affirmative, the question tag is negative, and vice versa.

You were on holiday, weren't you? You weren't tired, were you?

We use the verb be, auxiliary verbs (do, have) or modal verbs (will, would, etc.), depending on the tense of the verb in the statement.

tense	statement	tag
Present simple	You like chocolate,	don't you?
Present continuous	He's skiing,	isn't he?
Past simple	She lost her purse,	didn't she?
will	You'll be here soon,	won't you?
Present perfect	He's been away,	hasn't he?
would	He'd miss her,	wouldn't he?

n, at and on with time

- 1 Complete the sentences with in, at and on.
 - 1 I'm meeting Freya tonight ____ 7.30.
 - 2 We play tennis after school ____ Tuesday evenings.
 - 3 We're going to Paris together ___ Christmas.
 - 4 Amy and Ethan are going dancing ____ the weekend.
 - 5 Max doesn't like going out ___ night.
 - 6 William and Olivia like going skiing ____ the winter.
 - 7 They've got their final exams ____ June.
 - 8 We got married ____ 2006.
 - 9 It's my birthday ____ 22 September.
 - 10 We're driving to the beach ____ the morning.

We use at with:

clock times.

He arrived at rime dicinck.

festivals and holidays.
 We go to my parents at Chrismas.

the weekend, night.
 At night, we close all fire windows.

We use in with:

 parts of the day (the morning, the afternoon, the evening).

She got up early in the morning,

seasons.

In summer, we play termis.

· months.

My birthday is in April.

years (2005, 1492, etc.).
 Tom was poor in 1989.

We use on with:

days of the week.

Til see you on Mariday.

dates (12 May, 1 April, etc.).

The party is on 2 December.

831 The passive

- Rewrite the questions using the passive. Use by where necessary.
 - 1 Who wrote that poem?
 Who was that poem written by?
 - 2 Who painted that picture?
 - 3 How will they drive trains in the future?
 - 4 What causes traffic jams?
 - 5 Where have they taken your car?
 - 6 Why did they cancel the train?
 - 7 Who had cleaned the room?

2	Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. Use the
	affirmative or negative form of the passive and the correct
	tense.

1	The meeting next week	(change) from Monda
	to Friday.	

- 2 Cows ____ (not eat) in India.
- 3 Harriet eventually found her car. It _____ (not steal) by car thieves.
- 4 The painting Sunflowers _____ (paint) by Van Gogh.
- 5 The shopping centre ______ (open) next Monday by the mayor.
- 6 The Namia books _______ (not write) by \ K Rowling.

3 Choose the correct words.

Mobile phones ¹ use / are used by over 2 billion people all over the world today. But who ² were they invented / did they invent by?

Mobile phone technology ³ was first developed / developed first by American telecommunications company AT&T, but the inventor of the first hand-held mobile phone ⁴ considered / is considered to be Martin Cooper of Motorola. He ⁵ made / was made the first mobile phone call on 3 April 1973.

Since then mobile phones ⁶ have become / have been become cheaper and much more accessible to the general public. In the United States mobile phones ⁷ owned / are owned by 50% of children and nearly 3 billion dollars per year ⁸ spends / Is spent on commercial ring tones.

We make passive forms with the verb be + the past participle.

(There is a list of past participle forms on page 120 of the Workbook.)

Tense	Passive form
Present simple	Sweets are made of sugar.
Present continuous	A new supermarket is being built.
Past simple	The TV was invented in 1926.
Present perfect	My car has been repaired.
Past perfect	The keys had been lost earlier.
Future with will	Your dress will be cleaned soon.

In passive constructions, we use by when we want to say who (or what) performed the action.

The jet engine was invented by Frank Whittie.

💶 Indefinite pronouns

Use some-, any- and no- to complete the sentences in each group.

1	-DOGY
	a Does know where the bus stop is?
	b That cab is empty. There's in it.
	c We arrived in plenty of time because
	gave us a lift.
2	-thing
	a That suitcase is very light because there's
	in it.
	b I didn't buy in the duty free shop.
	c The flight attendants gave us to eat during
	the flight. It was delicious.
3	-where
	a Let's go different on holiday this year.
	b There's to sit on this bus. It's packed.

2 Correct the incorrect sentences.

- 1 There isn't nobody on the train.
- 2 | haven't got something to wear.
- 3 Freya doesn't want somebody to see her crying.

c We never go ______ nice at the weekend.

- 4 Can I have anything to drink?
- 5 I want to spend our holidays somewhere hot.
- 6 Please sit nowhere.
- 7 Has somebody seen my sunglasses?
- 8 Would you like something to drink?

We form indefinite pronouns with some-, any- and no-.

people	someone/somebody anyone/anybody no one/nobody
places	somewhere anywhere nowhere
things	something anything nothing

We use pronouns with some- in affirmative sentences and in offers and requests.

Somebody has eaten my lunch, Can I de something to help?

We use pronouns with any. In negative and interrogative sentences.

Theren't got enithing to ween.
Did you meet anyone interesting?

We can also use pronouns with *any*- in affirmative sentences when we mean 'it doesn't matter who/what/ where ...'.

Ask anybody round here and they'll kelp you

We use pronouns with *no*- with affirmative verbs as the meaning is already negative.

Nobody likes losing,

8.3 Indirect questions

- Rewrite the direct questions as Indirect questions using the words in brackets.
 - 1 What type of car was it? (Have you any idea ...) Have you any idea what type of car it was?
 - 2 Could you describe the robbers for me? (I wonder ...)
 - 3 What were they wearing? (Can you remember ...)
 - 4 What did they do with the bags they were carrying? (Would you mind telling me...)
 - 5 Where did the car go? (Did you notice ...)
 - 6 When did you phone the police? (Can you tell me ...)
 - 7 Could you come back tomorrow and answer some more questions? (I wonder ...)

We make Indirect questions with phrases like *Can you tell me...?* and *Do you know...?* We use them to ask politely for information.

Excuse me. Can I ask you what time it is?

To make a yes/no question into an indirect question, we use if.

Could you tell the if the film has started yet?

To make a wh- question into an indirect question, we use the question word.

Would you mind felling me where the bank is, please?

The word order and verb forms in an indirect question are the same as in a statement.

Do you know if there is a seat free on the flight to London?

8.4 Introductory it

- 1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
 - 1 we checked / departure time / job / It's / our / a good
 - 2 to sit / nownere / there's / a shame / It's
 - 3 a trolley / getting / worth / it / isn't
 - 4 changing / if the track's / blocked / trains / no use / It's
 - 5 the right / to find / ages / It took / us / platform
 - 6 in the / It's / to get / impossible / to the centre / rush
- 2 Rewrite the sentences to make them sound more natural using introductory it.
 - 1 To do my homework took me over an hour, It took me over an hour to do my homework.
 - 2 To repair my blke is impossible.
 - 3 That you failed your driving test is a shame,
 - 4. What you get me for my birthday doesn't matter.
 - 5 That we brought some sandwiches was a good idea.
 - 6 Taking the car to the centre isn't worth it.

We often use it in sentences referring to time, weather, temperature and distance.

It's seven piziock.

It's friday.

It took two days to travel from Europe to Australia.

It's sunny and it's 20°C.

It's tooker from here.

We can use it when we want to avoid starting a sentence with an infinitive, .ing form or clause, which often sounds unnatural or very formal.

H's great being have, (= Being here is great.)

If a hard to say exactly what I mean (= To say exactly what I mean is hard.)

It's a shame that she had to go home early. (= That she had to go home early is a shame.)

If doesn't matter where you go. (= Where you go doesn't matter.)

have something done

- Rewrite the sentences with the correct form of have something done.
 - The shoe repairer is mending Chloe's shoes. Chlosin having her shoen mended,
 - 2 The hairdresser has dyed my hair.
 - 3 The painters painted their house last year,
 - 4 The mechanic is repairing Tom's car,
 - The builders are changing my neighbour's windows. My neighbours.
 - 6 The photographer is going to take my photo.
 - 7 The optician tested Olivia's eyes last week.
 - 8 The dry cleaner has cleaned Harvey's coat.
 - 9 The plumber is going to install our new shower.
- 2 Complete the dialogue using the prompts in brackets and the correct form of have something done,
 - Lauren Look at Keira! What do you think of her new look?
 - I think she looks awful. 1 Hannah (she / cut / her hair)
 - Yes, I think so. And 2. Lauren
 - (she / dye / it), too. And her face looks different.3 Hannah
 - (she / not reduce / her nose), has she?
 - Lauren I don't know. Maybe. There's something strange about her mouth, too. 1_
 - (she / whiten / her teeth)
 - Yes, that's it! And her lips are bigger, too. Hannah
 - But what about that dress? 5_ Lauren (she / make / it) especially for the party?
 - That's what she said. Do you like it? Hannah
 - Not really. I think it makes her look older. And I Lauren don't know where "......
 - (she / do / her make up) because it's really bad.
 - Hannah What a waste of money! I think she looked better

We use the structure *hove* + object + past participle to say that you arranged for somebody to do something for you. (You didn't do it yourself.)

Thad my can cleaned last week.
You need to have your room redecorated.

You can also use the structure for unpleasant things that have happened to you (which you didn't arrange).

I had my mobile phone stolen yesterday. He had his leg broken while he was playing tootbail.

9.2 Reflexive pronouns

- Write a suitable response. Use a reflexive pronoun.
 - Do you have your clothes ironed?
 No. Liron them myarif.
 - 2 Does your mum have her hair dyed?

 - 4 Does your dad have his chest shaved?
 No
 - 5 Do you have your nails painted?
 - 6 Do you and your friends have your bikes repaired?
 No.
- 2 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box and a reflexive pronoun.

	bum	cut	get	hurt	look after	turn	
1	Ethan.				when he	fell off the stepladder	
2	She wa	arnec	her i	childre	n not to	on the	е
	hot fry	ing p	an.				
3				t away	for the wee	ekend and left us to	
				,			
4					ile I was sh	naving my legs.	
						rea	dγ
	every r						
6	,		_	a time	r switch an	d can	
	on and						

We use reflexive pronouns when the object of a verb is the same as the subject.

He hunt panaeti.

Subject pronoun	Reflexive pronoun
	myself
you	yourself
he	himself
she	herself
ít	itself
we	ourselves
you	yourselves
they	themselves

We use reflexive pronouns to add emphasis.

They painted the bedroom themselves,

93 Third conditional

- 1 Write third conditional sentences.
 - 1 Jacob spent all his money. He was broke.
 If Tacob hadn't spent all his money, he wouldn't have been broke.
 - 2 Holly forgot her credit card. She didn't buy a new TV.
 - 3 We bought a new car. We asked for a bank loan.
 - 4 Amy went to the sales. She found a bargain.
 - 5 Samuel didn't save up. He boπowed the money for the present.
 Samuel
 - 6 Daisy had enough money. She lent Benjamin £50.
 - 7 Joseph didn't look in the sales. He didn't find a cheap leather jacket.
 Joseph
- 2 Use the prompts to write third conditional questions.
 - 1 What / you / eat / last night / if / you / have / the choice?
 What would you have cater last might if you'd had the choice?
 - 2 What / you / do / If / you / feet III / this morning?
 - 3 Where / you / go / if / today / be / Sunday?
 - 4 Where / you / stay / if / you / go away / last weekend?
 - 5 Which film / you / see / If / you / go / to the cinema / last night?
 - 6 Who / you / visit / last night / if / you / have / the time?
 - 7 What / you / buy / yesterday / if / you / have / the money?

3 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 2.

What would you have eaten last night if you'd had the choice?

I'd have eaten lasagne and garlic bread in my favourite restaurant. How about you?

We use the third conditional to talk about the imaginary result of things that didn't happen.

N. I'd driven faster, we would have arrived before six.

We often use it to express criticism or regret.

You would have passed if you hadn't been so lazy! If I'd been more careful, I wouldn't have hurt myself.

We form the third conditional with if + past perfect, would have + past participle.

If John had arrived earlier, he would have seen the start of the film.

We can also put the *if* clause at the end of the sentence. I'd have invited you if I'd known you liked fancy dress parties.

Notice the short forms used in third conditional sentences. The short form of both *had* and *would* is 'd.

If I'd had more money, I'd have paid for you.

101 Participle clauses

- Combine the two sentences using a participle clause.
 - A picture was stolen by art thieves. It was painted by Munch.

A picture painted by Munch was stolen by act thieves.

- 2 You can see Velazquez in this painting. He is standing in the background.
- 3 The sculpture represents the biblical King David. It was carved in the early 1500s.
- 4 Cats is one of the longest-running musicals in Britain. It was written by Andrew Lloyd Webber.
- 5 The Matrix was released in 1999. It stars Keanu Reeves.
- 6 An exhibition has been extended by a month, it features works by M C Escher.
- 7 The play is about social justice. It was written by Bertoll Brecht.

We use participle clauses to give more information about a noun. They can be described as shortened relative clauses (defining or non-defining).

There's a woman carrying a baby. (= who is carrying a baby)

They contain either a present participle or past participle.

- Clauses with a present participle (-ing form) replace an active verb. The verb they replace can be in any tense.
 He worked in a shop selling shoes, (= which sells shoes)
- Clauses with a past participle replace a passive verb. The verb they replace can be in any tense.

A valuable statuette, made of gold, will be sold tomorrow. (= which is made of gold ...)

10.2 Determiners

- 1 Choose the correct words.
 - 1 Most / Most of people enjoy the cinema.
 - 2 Some / Some of modern art is difficult to understand.
 - 3 A few / A few of my friends are going to art college.
 - 4 Eleanor didn't like any / any of those portraits.
 - 5 Isabelle looked through every / every one of the postcards before she bought one.
 - 6 They had no / none time to buy souvenirs.
 - 7 They spent a little / a little of their pocket money on sweets.
 - 8 There wasn't much / much of the play left by the time the arrived.
- 2 Complete the sentences with many, much, a few or a little.

1	'How	friends have you made?"			
	Tust	I've only been here for a week '			

2 'How _____ time have we got?'

'Just _____, We'll have to run.'

3 'How ______ sandwiches do you want?'
'Just ______ I'm not that hungry.'

4 'How _____ milk would you like in your coffee?'

Just ______ I don't like it very milky.'

5 'How _____ people are coming to the party?'

'Just _____ Everyone's away that weekend.'

6 'How _____ money have you got?'
'Just _____ coins, but it's enough for an ice cream.'

3 Correct the mistakes with any, no or none.

- 1 Any of the people complained about the price.
- 2 We haven't got no paint.
- 3 No of my classmates has been to the opera.
- 4 I haven't read none books by Virginia Woolf.
- 5 Any art expert should miss the Vermeer exhibition.
- 6 There aren't no tickets left.

Each and every are followed by a singular countable noun.

Each is used when all the people or things it refers to are seen individually. Every is used to refer to all the people or things.

Each egg is painted in different volours. Every egg can be purchased for ten euros.



Few and a few are followed by a plural noun. Few has a negative meaning. A few has a neutral or positive meaning.

Few people came to the concert. It was very disappointing, A few students staved behind to help me.

Little and a little are followed by an uncountable noun. Little has a negative meaning. A little has a neutral or positive meaning.

People on this housing estate have tittle money and no luntire. I have a little money – let's go out.

Many is followed by a countable noun. Much is followed by an uncountable noun.

There aren't many people here. I haven't got much time to work.

All, most, some, any and no can be followed by either a countable or an uncountable noun.

Most people here have no fiver time at the wrekend. Some books are missing but all the CDs are here.

We can use determiners with of before another determiner and a noun.

A few of my friends came to the party. (plural noun)
All of the milk has been drunk. (uncountable noun)

When we use *no* and *every* with *of*, they change to *none* and *every one*. We use a plural noun with *every one*.

Every one of the students passed the exam-

o and such

Compete the dialogue with so or such.

Robert	What did you do for your birthday?				
Lily	We went to see the opera <i>Nabucco</i> . It was 1good.				
Robert	But it's 2long, isn't it?				
Lily	Yes, three hours. But it was ³ fantastic that the time flew by.				
Robert	What about the singing?				
Lily	Amazing. And <i>Nabucco</i> has * beautiful music, too. I really enjoyed it.				
Robert	Where did you see it?				
Lily	Oh, it was ' an incredible venue. An open air theatre on the edge of town. And we were sitting under the stars. It was ' romantic!				
Robert	It sounds fantastic. I might come with you next time.				

We can use *so* or *such* to intensify the meaning of an adjective or adverb.

be + so + adjective

I'm so happy!

so + adverb

They all tart so quickly.

such + adjective + plural noun / uncountable noun

She's got such beautiful eyes / bain.

such + a / an + adjective + noun

She's got such an altractive (act.

10.4) Nominal subject clauses

- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
 - 1 need / right now / on holiday / to go / What / I / is
 - 2 I'm / my exams / What / is / finishing / looking forward to
 - 3 to have / I'd like / a lie-in / What / is / to do / tomorrow
 - 4 a trip / What / is / I'm / planning / thinking about / together
 - 5 have / we're / party / What / an end-of-term / is / going to do
 - 6 watch TV / I / tonight / to do / What / is / want / instead of / revising
- 2 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Complete the sentences.

1	What we	need	right	now	is		
---	---------	------	-------	-----	----	--	--

- 2 What we're looking forward to is ______.
- 3 What we'd like to do tomorrow is _____
- 4 What we're thinking about is ______.
- 5 What we're going to do this weekend is __
- 5 what we re going to do this weekend is _____
- 6 What we want to do tonight is _____

We sometimes emphasise particular information in a sentence by putting it in a *what* clause followed by the appropriate form of the verb *be*.

We are looking for volunteers.

What we are looking for is volunteers

I really like action films.

What I really like is action films.

VOCABULARY : United in the last of the las

(II) Clothes

- 1 Underline the odd word out. Explain why it is different.
 - boots shoes jacket trainers You don't way a jacket on your feet.
 - 2 shorts sandals T-shirt coat
 - 3 shirt Jeans tracksult bottoms trousers
 - 4 blouse tie dress skirt
 - 5 jumper T-shirt socks top
 - 6 suit jeans shirt tie
- 2 Label the pictures with the words in the box.

combat trousers fleece hoody leggings mini skirt pelo shirt roll-neck v-neck



- 3 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Decide what are the best clothes to wear:
 - 1 to go to a party
 - 2 to go running
 - 3 to go out in the snow
- 4 to play football
- 5 to go on holiday
- 6 to go dancing

What would you wear to a party?

I'd wear a stylish, stripy top and jeans. What about you?

12 Compound adjectives

Look out!

A compound adjective is a single adjective made up of two or more words. These words are linked together with a hyphen to show that they are part of the same adjective.

short-sleeved blue-eyed

1 Match the words in A and B to make compound adjectives.

Α	В	A	В
high-	looking	bad-	haired
hard-	heeled	well-	known
old-	working	easy-	going
good-	- fashioned	long-	tempered

- 2 Complete the definitions with the compound adjectives in exercise 1.
 - 1 A person who isn't very fashionable is discharged.
 - 2 Someone who is atways relaxed is ______
 - 3 Shoes that make you taller are ______
 - 4 A person who does a lot of work is ______
 - 5 Someone who is always angry is ______
 - 6 An attractive person is _______
 - 7 Famous people are very ______
 - 8 A person who doesn't often go to the hairdresser's is

3 Complete the sentences with a compound adjective from



- 1 My sister's always found long heired men attractive.
- 2. People recognise him everywhere he goes. He's so-

3	That dress is	
	ald.	

- 4 He's so ______ he could be a model!
- 5 She can't walk in those ______ shoes.
- 6 It's difficult to have fun with Markus. He's so
- 7 She's very ______. She studies every night untimidnight.
- B Nothing worries David. He's very _____

Moun formation

THIS

We use the suffixes -ment, -ion and -ness to form nouns from adjectives. Sometimes the spelling changes.

amusement depression happiness

1 Read the Learn this! box. Use a suffix to form nouns from the adjectives in the box and write them in the correct column of the chart.

confused disappointed embarrassed excited frustrated homesick irritated nervous sad

-ment	-ion	-ness
1	1 confusion	1
2	2	2
3	3	3

- 2 Complete the sentences with nouns from exercise 1.
 - 1 Imagine my ______ when my trousers fell down!
 - 2 Brett's favourite band were only playing one concert that summer, so it was a big ______ when it was cancelled.
 - 3 There was a lot of _______ over the technology project because the instructions weren't clear.
 - 4 You could see the ______ on the children's faces when we told them about the holiday.
 - 5 Do you suffer from ______ when you're away from your family?
 - 6 They felt a deep ______ when their dog died.

22 Adjective prefixes

LEARN THIS!

- 1 We use the prefixes un-, dis-, in-, im-, il- and lr- to make negative adjectives.

 uncomfortable dissatisfied incredible
- 2 Before m and p we usually use im-: impossible
- 3 Before r we usually use ir-: irresponsible
- 4 Before I we usually use il-: illogical
- Read the Learn this! box and find three negative adjectives in the first paragraph of the text on page 16.
- 2 Rewrite the sentences using a prefix to make the adjectives negative.
 - 1 My mum's very patient.
 - 2 My bedroom's quite tidy.
 - My writing's always legible.
 - 4 My life is quite organised.
 - 5 Teat at regular times.
 - 6 I think I'm cuite sensitive.

3 SPEAKING Work in pairs. Tell your partner which sentences are true for you.

My mum's very patient. Is yours?

No, she's really impatient.

Adjectives + prepositions

N THIS!

Some adjectives are followed by certain prepositions before a noun or pronoun.

John is nervous about his exam.

I'm fed up with this book.

Jane's parents are very proud of her.

- 1 Read the Learn this! box. Then match the two parts of the sentences.
 - 1 Kurt is really happy
 - 2 I'm surprised
 - 3 They were sad
 - 4 Lydia was upset
 - 5 Keyin and Megan were bored
 - 6 He's ashamed
 - 7 Jack's parents were worried
 - 8 She's scared
 - a of heights.
 - b about their son.
 - c of his behaviour yesterday.
 - d with watching TV, so they went out.
 - e at the news he was leaving.
 - f about her bad exam results.
 - g at you! You're not usually so rude!
 - h with his new mobile phone.

2.4 -ed/-ing adjectives

- Choose the correct words.
 - 1 She was really shocked / shocking after the accident.
 - 2 I dropped all my books as! was going into class. It was very embarrassing / embarrassed!
 - 3 His parents were very disappointed / disappointing by his school report.
 - 4 The film was really excited / exciting. I was on the edge of my seat all the way through.
 - 5 Alistair is really irritated / irritating! He keeps borrowing things and then doesn't give them back.
 - 6 I don't know how to use this new program. The manual is really confused / confusing.

2.5 Phrasal verbs

- 1 Phrasal verbs consist of a verb and one or two prepositions. Some phrasal verbs are transitive. which means they are used with an object. We turned on the light.
- 2 Other phrasal verbs are intransitive, which means they are used without an object. The plane took off.

1	Read the information in the Learn this! box and tick (/) the
	correct sentence in each pair.

1	He was looking after the baby. He was looking after.	=
2	Isaac and Louise are going out. Isaac and Louise are going out home.	Ε
3	Our car broke down. Our car broke down the engine.	=
4	My grandmother is getting over. My grandmother is getting over her operation.	
5	Zoe tried on the jacket. Zoe tried on.	
6	My alarm clock didn't go off. My alarm clock didn't go off the alarm.	

2 Rewrite the sentences using the phrasal verbs in the box. All the verbs are transitive.

call back call off look after look for took forward to put away put on run out of

- 1 We haven't got any food!
- 2 You'd better wear a coat because it's cold outside.
- 3 Please can you take care of my plants?
- 4 They're very excited about the holidays.
- 5 They cancelled the football match because of the rain.
- 6 She's trying to find her purso.
- 7 I'd like you to tidy your clothes.
- 8 Can you return my phone call?

3.1 Jobs and gender

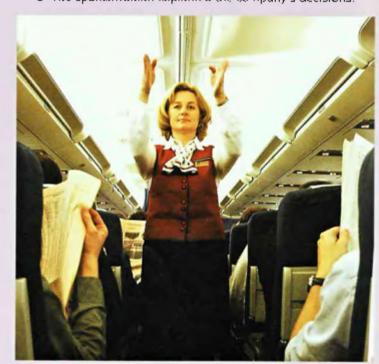
Complete the sentences with the jobs in the box.

architect thef estate agent mechanic nanny nurse surgeon travel agent

- 1 A ______ is an experienced cook.
- 2 A _____ takes care of sick people.
- 3 A ______ repairs car engines.
- 4 An _____ designs buildings.
- 5 A ____ sells holidays.
 6 A _____looks after children.
- 7 A _____ performs operations.
- 8 An ______ sells houses.

1 The suffix -ess indicates that the person doing a job is a woman. actress manageress air hostess

- 2 However, it is now more usual to use the same term for both men and women. actor manager flight attendant
- 3 The neutral words assistant, worker, person or officer are now often used instead of -man or -woman. police officer spokesperson factory worker
- 2 Read the Learn this! box and rewrite the sentences using a more neutral word for the job.
 - 1 The policeman was running down the street.
 - 2 The air hostess gave us a drink.
 - 3 The manageress was very friendly.
 - 4 The chairman opened the meeting.
 - 5 She's a really good actress.
 - The spokeswoman explained the company's decisions.



32 Agent nouns

EARN TRISI

1 We can use the following suffixes for people who do particular jobs or activities: -er, -or, -ist, -ant, -ician farmer actor journalist applicant musician

2 Agent nouns ending in -er sometimes have a corresponding form finishing in -ee. -er is the person who does the action. -ee is the person who is affected by the action. employer—employee trainer—frainee

 Read the Learn this! box. Find examples of agent nouns in the text on page 26.

2	Complete the sentence	s. Use an agent no	oun formed :	from the
	word in brackets.			

Fran's dream is to become a well-known ______ (music).
 Mel loves chemistry and physics, so she wants to be a ______ (science).

3 Matt enjoys reading and writing and he'd like to be an _____ (edit).

4 Vince is good at explaining things so he's going to be a ______ (teach).

5 Danny likes working with numbers, so he's hoping to become an ______ (account).

6 Jill's ambition for the future is to be a bank manager. At the moment she's a ______ (train).

Phrasal verbs: separable and inseparable

FARN THIST

1 Some transitive phrasal verbs are separable, which means there are two possible positions for the object.

She picked up some bread on the way home. She picked some bread up on the way home.

2 However, when the object is a pronoun, it always goes between the two parts of a separable phrasal verb.

She picked it up on the way home.

3 Other transitive phrasal verbs are inseparable, and the object always follows the phrasal verb. He gets on well with his mother. He gets on well with her.

4 Your dictionary will tell you if a phrasal verb is separable or not.

1	Read the Learn this! box and rewrite the sentences using a
	pronoun instead of the phrase in bold. Use a dictionary to
	check if the phrasal verbs are separable or inseparable.

Why don't you take off your coat?
 Why don't you take π m?
 They've employed a namey to look after the children.

4 I'm looking forward to our trip,

5 When they got home they put away the shopping.
When they got home they ______

6 Kieran worked out the answer.
Kieran

7 The teacher gave out the exams.
The teacher ______

4.1 Parts of the body

1 Solve the anagrams to make parts of the body.

1 neek 5 elg 9 ohumt 2 sheet 6 hsmtcoa 10 sneo 3 eto 7 abkc

3 eto 7 abk 4 gfienr 6 eey

2 Choose the correct words.

1 My friends always pull my knee / leg about my red hair.

2 Greg is head over heets / ankles in love with Sandra.

3 I wasn't going to lend Mick any money, but he twisted my elbow / arm.

4 He really put his foot / hand in it when he asked her about her cat. It died last week!

5 I called her because I needed to get something off my chest / stomach.

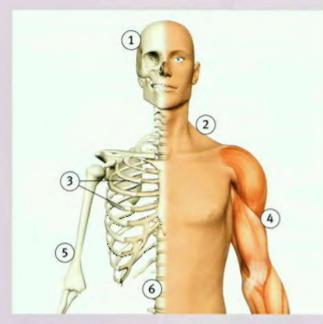
6 'We won the basketball match 78–76.'
'It was 78–77, actually.'
'Stop splitting hairs / fingers! We won, didn't we?!'

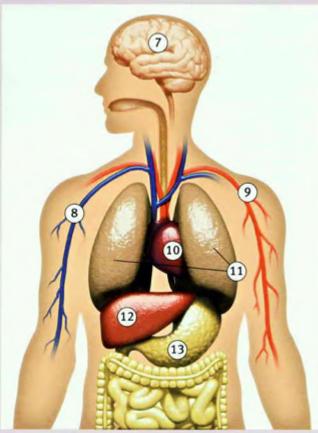
131

4.2 Inside the body

1 Match the parts of the body in the box with the pictures.

artery bone brain heart liver lungs muscle ribs skin skull spine stomach veln





43 Aches and pains

ARN THIS!

- 1 You can say you have a pain in a part of your beat He's got a pain in his shoulder.
- 2 You can also say a part of your body aches. His back aches because he's been moving the furniture.
- 3 There are special words for aches and pains in parts of the body.

 backache earoche toothache a headache

1	Read the Learn this! box and complete the sentences are
	He's got.

1	ankle - 56% got a pare in this binds.
2	head He's got a bradakne.
3	stomach
4	arm
5	leg
6	tooth
7	knee
8	ear
9	neck
0	back

5.1 Noun prefixes

THIS		use the following proing of nouns.	efixes to change	Tibe
2	mono-	one or single	micro-	small.
LEARN	multi-	more than one	pseudo-	THE STORY
P	semi-	half or partly	sub-	1655 3
	auto-	of or by yourself	ex-	former
		ctionary will tell you it noun with prefix is w		

1 Read the Learn this! box. Complete the sentences see words in brackets and the correct prefix.

1	He's got so much money he's a (managed)
2	RFID tags contain a small (chip).
3	We sit in a (circle) in our English class
4	He talks in a really boring(tone). It makes asleep!
5	Some people regard astrology as a s. ==
6	Robbie Williams wrote his (biograph under 28!
7	He's going out for dinner with his g-* tonight. I wonder if they'll get back together.
8	Hike watching films in English if they have

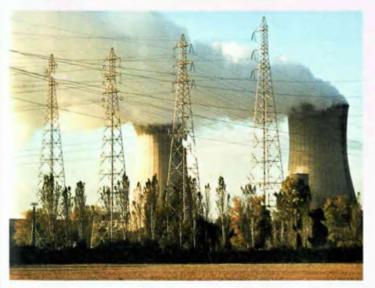
522 Compound nouns (1)

- Compound nouns are formed by joining two nouns username sound card or by joining an adjective and a noun software hard disk
- 2 You need to check in a dictionary whether a compound noun is written as one word or two words.
- Read the Learn this! box and find more compound nouns in the text on page 46.
- 2 Match 1-10 with a-j to make compound nouns used to talk about the environment.

1	solar	a	species
2	GM	b	rain
3	carbon	¢	effect
4	global	d	layer
5	endangered \	e	disposa
6	greenhouse	f	emissio
7	ac.d	g	forest
8	waste	'n	toods
9	ozone	í	power
O	rain	į	warming

3 Complete the sentences with compound nouns from exercise 2.

T	wary forests have been gamaged by
2	The is causing the earth's atmosphere to heat
	up.
3	will cause the icebergs to melt.
4	The Amazon is in the Amazon Basin of South
	America.
5	Thehelps to protect the earth from harmful
	radiation from the sun.
6	Coal-burning power stations are a source of
7	Some can only be seen in zoos.
8	Is a renewable source of energy.



SS Verb + noun collocations

- Choose the correct words to make sentences about ideas that would help the environment.
 - Developing countries should avoid / promote the mistakes made by developed countries.
 - Local councils should promote / ban the recycling of household waste.
 - 3 Multinational companies should improve / increase conditions in their factories in developing countries.
 - 4 Teachers should ban / discuss environmental issues with their students.
 - 5 Governments should ban / improve the use of CFC gases.
 - 6 Governments should prevent / increase investment in renewable sources of energy.
 - 7 If governments don't achieve / prevent global warming, more natural disasters will occur.
 - 8 Governments should try to avoid / achieve the targets for carbon emissions that they agree on.

6.1 House and garden

 Complete the mind map with the words in the box. Some of the words can be used more than once.

armchair basin bath bedside table bookcase chest of drawers coffee table desk dishwasher fireplace flowerbed fridge hedge microwave mirror path shower stepladder wardrobe washing machine



2 SPEAKING Work in pairs, Ask and answer questions about your ideal house.

What's in your living room?

There are two big red sofas around a big coffee table. There's a large picture above the fireplace and an amazing flat screen television on another wall. How about you?

6.2 Compound nouns (2)

Compound nouns: nouns functioning as adjectives
Some compound nouns are formed by joining two
nouns. The first noun defines the second noun so it
functions as an adjective.

music room flowerbed

 Read the Learn this! box. Complete the pairs of compound nouns with the nouns in the box.

	brush	door	game	lamp	pan	player	room	table
1	coffee dining	-		5	כט טעט	-		
2	front cupboa	ard —		6	şauc fryin			_
3	guest bed	-	-	7		o puter –	-	
4	desk table	_		8	pain hair	t		-

2 Match the definitions with the compound nouns from exercise 1. Use a dictionary to check whether the compound noun is written as one or two words.

1	Soup is made in a						
2	We all sit at the for Sunday lunch.						
3	She needed a because her hair was a mess.						
4	We turned on the to watch a film.						
5	The main entrance is through the,						
б	When my aunt visits, she always sleeps in the						
7	We've got a new PC, but my don't work on it						
B	I couldn't study because there wasn't enough light in my						
	room, so my parents hought me a						

63 Intransitive phrasal verbs

Intransitive phrasal verbs

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive. They do not take a direct object and you cannot separate the verb and the preposition.

carry on wake up break down get up I asked him to stop, but he carried on walking.

 Read the Learn this! box. Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the Intransitive phrasal verbs in the box.

come back fall through give up go out grow up hold on stand up stay in

- 1 When he becomes an adult he wants to be a fire fighter.
- 2 'What are you doing this weekend?' 'I'm going to a party with some friends.'
- 3 He told me to wait while he fetched his jacket.
- 4 We returned home from the match exhausted.

- 5 She wasn't enjoying the lessons so she decided to stop learning to play the piano.
- 6 They remained in the house because it was raining.
- 7 They got to their feet and left the room.
- 8 His plans for the weekend didn't happen because of the bad weather.
- 2 Decide if the sentences are correct or not. Correct the sentences that are incorrect.
 - 1 He sat down the chair and began to read his book.
 - 2 She told us to hold on while she called a doctor.
 - 3 They grew up their childhood in a village in Sicily.
 - 4 Jay and Mia got up themselves and went to school.
 - 5 Courtney woke up late this morning,
 - 6 Madison stood up the room and started to speak.
 - 7 Please don't come back late tonight.
 - 8 The plane didn't take off the runway until midnight.

7.1 Three-part phrasal verbs

Three-part phrasal verbs

Some phrasal verbs have more than two parts. These phrasal verbs are used with an object and they are inseparable.

run out of split up with

1 Read the Learn this! box. Complete the three-part phrasal verbs with the words in the box. Then match them to their meaning.

	away	down	on	out	out	up	up	up	
1	get	will	h	a	be s	omed	ıne's	girlfr	iend/bo.
2	Γall	will	h						than some
3	get	with	h	C	have	e a go	od re	atatio	nship
4	put _	wit	h	d	not l	ре ри	n'sh	ed for	
5	look_	on	1	e	thin	k of s	omet	thing	
6	come	¥	vith	f	have	an a	ırgun	ient	
7	look_	to		g	toler	rate s	omet	hing	
8	go	with		h	adm	ire so	meo	ne	

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the three phrasal verbs in exercise 1.

Ivan ______ people who have achieved a lot in life.
 Millie has _____ Theo again, so they aren't taking to

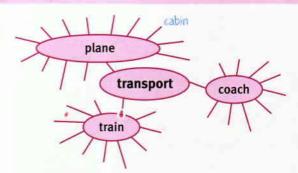
	each other.
3	Hannah a fantastic idea for the school trip.
4	Dominic doesn't keep in touch with his brothers because
	doesn'tthem.
5	I think Declan's in love. He's Mia for 3 months.
6	Charlotte her younger sister because she did:
	go to university.

- 7 Billy ____ not doing his homework. The teacher digner notice.
- 8 How do you ______ him? He's so bad-tempered.

31 Travel and transport

1 Complete the mind map with the words in the box. Some of the words can be used more than once.

aisle arrive bay cabin carriage check-in desk departure lounge driver flight attendant gate journey land leave luggage rack motorway overbead lockers pilot platform runway take off ticket inspector track waiting room



-	CI	4 L		č	-1 4
_	Complete	the sentences	5 With Words	trom exe	rcise 1.

- 1 The coach to Oxford leaves from ______14.
- 2 We bought some presents from the shops in the before we went to the gate to board.
- 3 We took our bag onto the coach and put it on the

4	The	brought us some free drinks because the	€
	flight was so la	-	

- 5 Our journey was very comfortable because we had seats in the first-class ______
- 6 There were no seats left on the train, so we had to stand in the ______ for the whole journey
- 7 There was no traffic on the ______ so the coach arrived early.
- 8 We couldn't find our tickets when the ______ asked for them, so we had to pay again.

8.2 Tourism and travel

Choose the correct words.

- 1 We prefer cooking our own meals, so we usually stay in a self-catering apartment / hotel on holiday.
- 2 We didn't enjoy our last trip to our usual ski resort / village in the Alps. There wasn't any snow!
- 3 The guided tour / trip of the cathedral took two hours, but it was really interesting.
- 4 Our package holiday / break included the flights, the accommodation, the excursions and all our meals.
- 5 Our trip to Amsterdam was a bargain because we went on a charter flight / plane.
- 6 We went to the beach for a long Saturday / weekend last month. We stayed from Friday to Monday.
- 7. We went on a day travel / trip to the zoo last Sunday.
- 8 My parents are on a city break / holiday in Prague.

8.3 Verbs + prepositions

Verbs + prepositions

Some verbs are often followed by certain prepositions.

Let's listen to some music. She smiled at her mather.

2 in questions, we often put the preposition at the end.

What are you waiting for?

1 Read the Learn this! box and complete the pairs of sentences with the same preposition.

1	They're on the platform waiting .	the train.
	We apologised to her	arriving late.

- 2 They argued ______ him about the price.

 She agreed _____ me about the poor service.
- 4 She's concentrating the audio guide. He insisted taking a taxi,
- 5 People always laugh __ Sam's jokes. What are you staring __?
- 6 That suitcase belongs ______ me.
 They listened ______ the announcement carefully.

9.1 Money and payment

 Match words in A and B to make phrases to complete the sentences.

A	В
bury	от толеу
save up	a bargain
a waste	broke
be	for a laptop

A	В
be	in cash
afford	overcharged
pay	a loan
ask for	a new car

1	lessica's	PC is in	ent old	She's going	10	

- 2 Matthew's going to earn some money at last. He doesn't want to ______ any more.
- Make sure you count your change. You don't want to
 again!
- 4 We couldn't _____ so we bought a second-hand one.
- 5 When Lucy goes shopping in the sales she always manages to ______
- 6 My MP3 player stopped working after two days.
 What
- 7 The corner shop on my street doesn't take credit cards. You have to ______.
- 8 Harry didn't have enough money to open his own business, so he had to ______ from the bank.



2 Complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

	ord bargain borrow debt discount lend ring up waste						
Ben	Did tell you was 1 for a digital camera?						
jay	Are you? I can 2 you some money, if you want.						
Ben	Thanks, but I'd rather not. I hate being in						
Jay	I know what you mean. What do your parents think?						
Ben	They think it's a 4 of money. They say should use theirs instead of buying my own.						
Jay	Well maybe you can buy a ⁵ in the sales.						
Ben	That's what I'm hoping. I should be able to buy a goo one even if I can't $\frac{a}{a}$ the best one in the shop.						
Jay	You need to look around and see what ⁷ the shops are offering.						
Ben	Good idea. Do you want to come with me?						

9.2 Prepositions + noun phrases

Look out!

Some nouns are used in expressions with a fixed preposition.

by cheque by credit card in cash

1 Complete the pairs of noun phrases with the prepositions in the box.

I	at	ьу	for	from	in	on	out of	und	er
1	-		fun a ci	nange			5		first sight his own expense
2	_			ince stake			6	_	control her breath
3	_			phone iday	;		7	_	touch pocket
4	_			uble ness			8	_	scratch A to Z

2	Complete the sentences with preposition + noun phrases from exercise 1.
	Lewis invited all his friends to his holiday villa
	They didn't have to pay a thing!
	2 She told her friend the answer so that the
	teacher couldn't hear.
	3 James and Ryan are away for the party. They're
	that week.
	4 I wasn't expecting to see Jake in Berlin, so it was a lovely
	surprise when we met in a bar.
	5 Megan's room's again. She never tidles it. 6 Cameron's a bit with his friends at the
	moment because he's moved to another town.
	7 We had to start the project when Abigait's
	computer crashed and we lost all the data.
	8 We never do anything exciting at the weekend, so we
	decided to go to the theme park
ä	
9.	3 Small and large numbers
Ī	Look out!
	1 In English, thousands, millions and billions are written
	with commas,
	425,950 9,310,896 2,856,487,000 2 Decimals are written with a decimal point, When we use
	a decimal we say each number to the right of the
	decimal point individually.
	4.75 = 'four point seven five' NOT 'four point seventy-five'
	CDEAVING Madely and Middle down the state of
1	SPEAKING Work in pairs. Write down three numbers larger than 1,000 and three numbers with a decimal point. Read out
	the numbers for your partner to write down. Then swap roles,
	You say:
	One million two hundred and thirty thousand.
	Your partner writes: 1,290,000
2	Write the fractions in numbers and complete the percentages.
	1 ½ haif 50 %
	2 a cuarter%
	3 three tenths%
	4 three quarters%
	5 a fifth %
	6 a tenth %
	7 a twentieth %

CHIP CHINA

10.1 Artists and artistic activities

1 Complete the chart with the words in the box.

cartoonist composes dancer draws film instrument novelist performs playwright pictures poems song screenplays sculptures songwriter

	Artist	Activity		
Performing	musician	plays an/		
arts .		plays a piece of music		
		dances /		
		a dance		
	actor	acts / appears in a play		
		or		
	singer	sings a		
Visual arts	painter	paints /		
		pictures		
		draws cartoons		
	sculptor	sculpts /		
		creates / makes		
Music	composer	music /		
		writes music		
		writes songs		
Literature		writes plays		
	poet	writes		
		writes novels		
	scriptwriter	writes		

- 2 Complete the sentences with the words from the chart in exercise 1.
 - The sculptor Botero creates enormous ______ of overweight figures.
 - 2 Do you prefer the ______ of the romantic or the modern poets?
 - 3 Arthur Miller is one of the most famous American
 - _____. He wrote the play Death of a Salesman.
 - 4 It must be difficult for a ________ to convert the words of a novel into the screenplay for a film.
 - 5 The composer Tchaikovsky ______ some very moving symphonies.
 - 6 The novelist Thomas Hardy wrote some fairly depressing

10.2 Compound nouns (3)

Look out!

We can form compound nouns from two nouns or from an adjective and a noun.

stage musical abstract painting

- 1 Look at the text about Banksy on page 98 and find at least four compound nouns.
- 2 Match words in A and B to make compound nouns.

A	В	A	В
electric	kit	heavy	song
backing	vocals	European	singer
classical	music	love	tour
drum	guitar	lead	metal

- 3 Choose the correct words.
 - I can never tell what abstract paintings / art are supposed to represent.
 - 2 The stage / scenery musical We will rock you tells the story of the rock band Queen.
 - 3 Performance / Acting artists are very common in contemporary art exhibitions nowadays.
 - 4 The stage hands / arms helped move the scenery.
 - 5 His drum apparatus / kit takes up a lot of space.
 - 6 Andy Warhol became a household / family name in the sixties.
 - 7 Expensive works of art are often put in glass cases / boxes for exhibitions.
 - 8 The subject / topic matter of her paintings is often disturbing.



OXFORD

ON VERSITY PRES

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford axia 6 pr

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Θ_X ford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, wholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Danes Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delbi Shanghai Taipei Toronto With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Ozech Republic France Greece Guaternala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailond Turkey Ukraine Victnam

OXFORD and OXFORD BY CLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted Database right Oxford University Press (maker) First published 2008 2012 2011 2010 2009 2008 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 1 2

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Deportment, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 455181 6 Block ISBN: 978 0 19 455182 3 CD-ROM ISBN: 978 0 19 455180 9 Pack

Printed in Spain by Orymor S.A.

AURNOW/LEDGEMENTS

The publisher and authors are grateful to the many teariers and students who read and piloted the measurement, and provided toubladde feedback. With special thanks to the following for their materization to the development of the Sciations series: Zinta Andzane, Larvin: Irena Bratenkieme, Lithmania: Kat. Elekes. Hungary; Danica Gondová, Slovakia; Ferenc Kelemen, Hungary; Natasha Koltico, Ukraine; Mario Maleta, Croata: Juraj Marcek, Slovakia. Dace Miška, Latvia; Anna Morns, Ukraine; Hana Musilková, Czech Republic; Asorsanta Nyin), Hungary; Eva Pauletová, Czech Republic; Hana Pavilková, Czech Republic: Rita Rudiatione, Lithuania; Dagmar Škorpíková, Czech Republic).

The publisher and mathors would like to thank: Zoltán Rézműves for the part he played in developing the material.

The anthors and publisher are groughd to those who have given permission to reprothate the following extructs and adaptations of copyright material: p9 'Somehody's Watching Mef. Words and Music by Rockwell & 1983 Jobete Music Colline. EMI Music Publishing Ltd, London W6 58W. Reproduced by permission of International Music Publications 1rd (a trading name of baker Movie 1.14), All Rights Reserved, p26 'Cream of the crop: Mart Kenting meets the new, highachieving generation of Polish migrant workers' by Malt Keating, 20 May 2006, from The Guardian © Guardian News & Media Ltd 2006, Reproduced by permission, p38 'The day I mer the memory man' by Janta Barton, 17 June 2003, from The Guardian O Grandian News & Media 1(4,2003, Reproduced by permission, p66 Whet You Are Old by WR Yeats. Reproduced by permission of A. P. Wart Ltd on behalf of Graume Years, p68 'Are Online Relationships Real? by Linda F, Johnson, from HYPERLINX "http://www.personal-computer-mirondom' www.personal-computer-tutor.com. Reproduced by kindpermission of the author, p69 'Hero' Words and Music by Enrique Iglesias, Paul Barry, and Mark Taylor © 2001 Enrique Iglesia: Music, Rive Dmite Music 1td and Metrophonic Music 1td (50%) BMI Music Publishing Ind. London W8 58W. Reproduced by permission of International Music Publications Ltd (a trading name of Faber Music 1rd). All Right: Reserved. (45%) Published by Crosstown Songs UK Inf. (MCPS/PRS) Sub-Published. by Fintage Publishing & Collection 8.V. Reproduced by permission, p78 'Small spectator, big game in Africa' from The Surebay Times, 3 December

2006. Reproduced by permission of NI Syndication, p89 'Everything I (1995) Lyrics by David Gates & Sony, ATV 'Junes 1141. Administreed by Sony, ATV Music Publishing. All rights reserved, Used by permission, p92 'Freedow' Footprints' by Jen by Hordz, from Newswerk April 10 17 2006. Reprinted by permission of the author.

Sources: p27 'One millionaire's strange cry - rickers, please!' by Vincert Mallozzi from The New York Times 14 April 2005, p84 TIYPER*TNK 'Error www.quoteworld.org' www.cnoreworld.org p86 www.texco.uk

Thanks to: Helen Reilly of www.armosdesign.co.uk for managing all illustrations and researched and commissioned photography

Illustrations by: Claude Bordeleau/Agent/02 pp54, 64: Jny Cosney p 124: Daniel Oakley/Arnos Design 1cd p53 (replica of a tree fridge), Analy Parker pp48, 45, 57, 132.

The publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to reproduce photographs: Alamy pp4 (man wearing cape), 18, 24 (secretary, discret (librarian), 37, 38 (cards), 44 (scanner, Playstation), 46, 67, 69, 75 (plane), 18 (skiing), 77 (safari trip), 81, 83 (zoo, Museum of Childhond, Dynamic Earth-90, 91 (bicycle), 94 (art installation, piano recital, still life), 104 (smipping). 104 (balletiRedferns); Armos Design 13d pp5, 23, 26 (graphs),44 computer game), 63, 103, 117; BBC Photo Library pp.97 (still from The Choir); Camera, Press pp66 (Adam Mickiewicz)(Illatein Bilk), Sarah Coles HQ, London 1996 (Beer Can Penis 1993-2004 by Sarah Lucas); Contris pp4 (woman wearing baggy surt, 6, 10, 11 (horse riding), 14 (cross), 17 (tecnager, ghost town) [10] (band)@ik Isakson). 34 (plumber), 37 (toy maker), 30, 34, 45 (Reuter). 53 [craffsmart/Christophe Boisvien, cars/Charles O'Rear], 56 [Inch Ness]. 60, 61 (women house), 66 (W.B Yeats), 70, 72 (yoga/Ron Chapple, weights) Catherine Wessel), 73 (Boad and Angelina), 75 (car), 76 (boach scene),7 78 (elephants), 84 (currency), 88, 92 [King Pacific Lodge/Richard T. Nowing. 93 (both), 96 (Shark/Damien Hirst), 98 (CND by Banksy), 100, 128, 137; Dreamstime p16 (war memorial/Oolir); Empies pp98 (men with Bananas) Banksy', 99 (Spiderman and swimming pool street drawings by Julian Beever), 104 (grafitti); Fotolia p44 (keybna-d/tommy higherg), p84 (piggs) bank), 87, 91 (tent); Getty Images pp/ (model with red socies), 7 (TAXIMI). Spencer Rewell), 12 (failor/Dun Smetzen, 14 (upset, bored, pleased .excres). 15 (Thorn Lang), 16 (poppy day/Getty/APP), 17 [villaget, 29, 38 (Andi Bell), 39, 40, 50, 56 (sasquatch/Photonica), 7.1 (The Beckhours), 74 (craffic-jame, 85 (both), 86, 94 (gig): Istock pp26 (polish flag)Ufok Yivana, uk flag)Christolise Steer), 36 (fast food), 43 (cll), 44 (Japtop, monitor, printer, mouse/Donald Swartz), 78 (leopard), 83 [Edinburgh castle); Mary Evans Picture Library pp25 (llok boy); 58 (Tichborne, Orton); Fhotolibrary pp33 (Japan Travel) Howard: Nintendo p72 (brain game/The Red Consultancy); PA Photos p50 [boxing/Michael Villagran/AP] 72 [woman playing game/Kevin P. Cages/AP] Punchstock pp8 (CCTV camera/Image Source), 11 (siblings), 12, 24 (police) woman/Peter Dazely), 41; Rex Features 1.td pp4 (model wearing tracksmit), 8 (monitoring screens), 19, 28 (midwife/folin Selby), 35, 65, 74 pairport scene. underground scene), 80, 94 (buskers, performance art), 96 JMy Bed/Traces Eminj, 101: Science Photo Library p47, 53, 56 (Nessie), 130:S(i)] Fictures. p133 (Michel Gunther/BIOS); Telegraph Media Croup(David Howells p27) (Walter Rourke);The Art Archive p25 (water caddy). Musée Carnavalet rules Gianni Dagli Ortil: The Bridgeman Art Library p95 (Sunday Afternoon on the Island of to Grand Jatte 1884-86 by Seurat, Georges Pierre/The Art Institute of Chicago II, 1984), 104 (Branch Hill Pond Hampstead by John Constant-1776-1837/The Victoria & Albert Museum London UK); The Forest Wake-Print Collection USA p95 (Lunch with Lautree/Warrington Colescon, 1924). gUK Government An. Collection pp58 (The Tichborne Glaimant rna) scenes. Stewart Wood p97 (still from How Ballet Changed My Life).

Solutions Intermediate MultiROM

In your computer

- Interactive activities to practise the grammar and vocabulary in the Student's Book
- Exercises to help improve your writing and listening
- Games to help you revise what you've learned

In your CD player

- Audio tracks for listening exercises in Solutions Intermediate Workbook;
- 1 Listening 1, pages 20-21
- 2 Listening 2, pages 38-39
- 3 Listening 3, pages 56-57
- 4 Listening 4, pages 74-75
- 5 Listening 5, pages 92-93

Solutions

for success in English

Solutions is a 5-level course written for secondary-school students who need everyday English and exam preparation.

From Elementary to Advanced, *Solutions* supplies the language, teaches the skills and provides the support to get students using English confidently.

- ► Solutions for your exam
 - . The course covers all exam topics and task types
 - Integrated 'Get ready for your exam' lessons give students exam-specific preparation and practice
- ► Solutions for language skills
 - Language in context, step-by-step practice and supported production activities provide effective vocabulary and grammar learning
 - · Personalised activities with maximum support get students speaking
 - · Guided writing lessons and regular listening activities build confidence
- ► Solutions for the classroom
 - · Clear focus on achievable 'I can' statements
 - . Easy to prepare, easy to use: one lesson in the book = one lesson in the classroom

PLUS

- Grammar Builder, Grammar Reference and Vocabulary Builder for further practice
- · Student's MultiROM with extra activities and more listening practice

Student's Book with MultiROM ■ Workbook ■ Audio CDs ■ Teacher's Book ■ Test Bank MultiROM ■ Website www.oup.com/elt/solutions

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS



